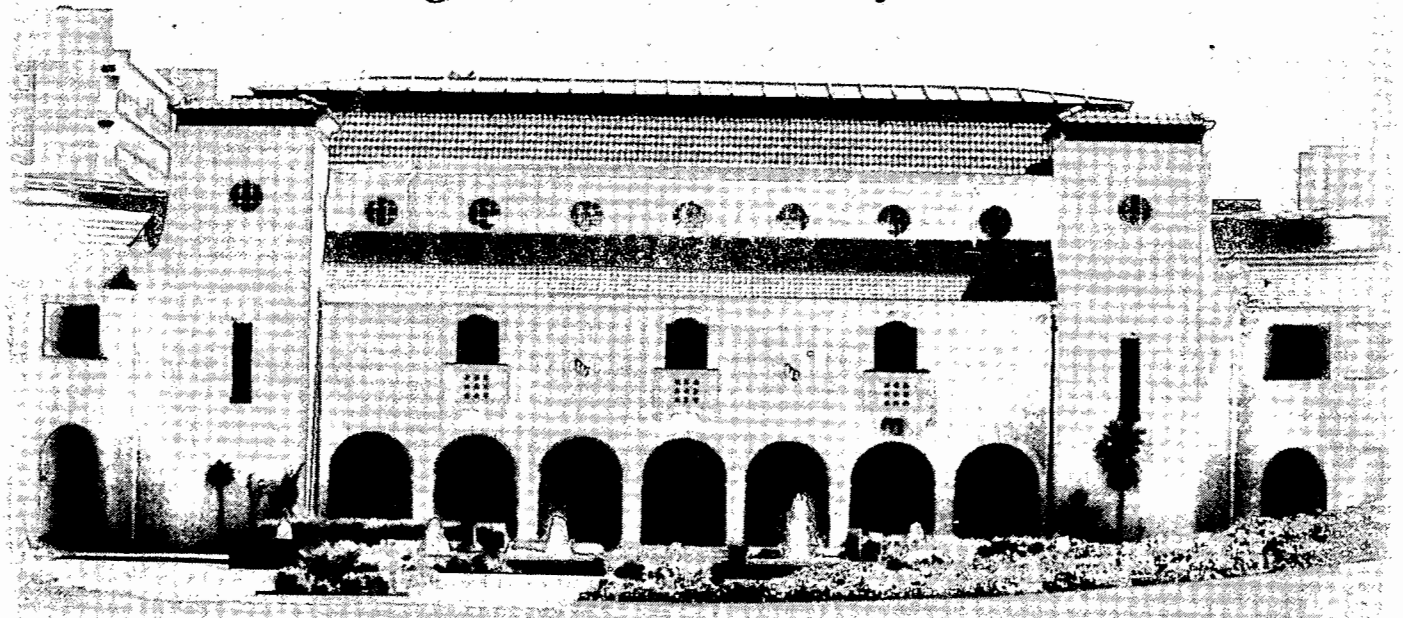
The phytochemical content and anti-diabetic properties of *Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii* var. davyana



Lisa Botes RD
M.Sc in Dietetics

Thesis submitted for the degree in Philosophia Doctor in Dietetics at the School of Physiology, Nutrition and Consumer Sience of the North-West University, Potchefstroom Campus.

Promotor: Prof. Du T. Loots
Co-Promotor: Prof. M. Pieters

Potchefstroom
South Africa
2009

To my husband Schalk Botes for your love, patience, understanding, support, and unwavering faith in me throughout this study and the completion of my thesis. Life would be so much less without you.

Rev. 3 v 8

"See, I have placed before you an open door that no one can shut."

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Without God I would not have been able to complete the study. I would like to thank God for His grace and for giving me the ability to complete the thesis. To Him all the power and the glory.

A special word of thanks to the Experimental Animal Centre of the North-West University, Potchefstroom Campus for the use of their facilities. My sincere gratitude to the Medical Research Foundation (MRC) for their financial support, and to "Aloe Ferox", an industrial supplier, for the generous donation of *Aloe ferox* leaves.

I would also like to express my appreciation to the following people who made the completion of the study possible:

- My promoter and co-promoter, Prof. Du Toit Loots and Prof Marlien Pieters, for their continued support and guidance.
- Prof Francois van der Westhuizen, for his assistance with the biochemical analysis.
- Cor Bester and Antionette Fick for their dedication, assistance, and guidance with the handling and care of the experimental animals.
- Dr M.D.Shahidul Islam, for his assistance with the care and handling of the experimental animals.
- Dr Hanekom, for her continued encouragement and interest in my personal well being.
- Prof L.A Greyvenstein for the language editing.
- My parents, Tommie and Magda, for your continued, invaluable support, encouragement, patience, wisdom, love and prayers. You truly were pillars of strength throughout the study.
- To my sisters, Petro and Sonia, for your prayers, encouragement and support.

- To Oom Willem, Tannie Bettie, Oupa and Ouma, for your continued love and support.
- Last but not least, to my loving husband, Schalk, for your dedication to this thesis, your patience, your kind nature and undying love.

ABSTRACT

Motivation: Diabetes mellitus is a non-communicable disease considered to be one of the five leading causes of death worldwide, characterized by hyperglycaemia and hyperlipidaemia as a result of altered glucose and lipid metabolism. Recently the search for suitable antidiabetic agents has focused on plants used in traditional medicine. Various *Aloe* species have been used for centuries in the management of various diseases, including diabetes. The majority of the scientifically based research on this topic was done on *Aloe vera* (or *Aloe barbadensis*) and *Aloe arborescens*. However, in the rural communities, the type of *Aloe* which is chosen as a traditional medicine would depend on its immediate availability to the specific community. Hence, various communities in different parts of the world would use the species of *Aloe* indigenous to their immediate surroundings. *Aloe ferox* (indigenous to the Western provinces of South Africa) and *Aloe greatheadii* var. davyana (indigenous to the Northern provinces of South Africa) are the most frequently used among the rural communities of South Africa to treat diabetes, even though very little scientific evidence, if any, exists to substantiate its use in diabetes. Different *Aloe* species would have varying phytochemical contents, health benefits and possible toxicities. Hence, it is of relevance for scientists, industry, and rural communities to not only investigate the relevant medicinal uses of their indigenous *Aloe* species, but also to determine the active components and their individual or combined mechanisms of biological function.

Objectives: The main objective of this study was to determine and compare the anti-diabetic effects of *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* ethanol leaf gel extracts using a streptozotocin (STZ)-induced diabetic rat model. In order to provide a foundational body of evidence for the aforementioned, a secondary objective included the characterization and comparison of the phytochemical content of *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* leaf gel extract (LGE) and 95% ethanol

leaf gel extract (ELGE) using gas chromatography mass spectrometry (GC-MS) and spectrophotometry prior to this, in order to confirm the presence of phytochemicals with health related benefits and to determine the most optimal extraction conditions for these.

Methods: The phytochemical content of both *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* var davyana LGE and ELGE were analyzed and compared via standard extraction methods and analysis on GC-MS (Agilent, USA) and spectrophotometrically (Shimadzu UV-1601 spectrophotometer). The extract obtained from the extraction method providing the most phytochemicals with previously proposed antidiabetic action, was chosen for the intervention study that followed. The intervention study was done using a STZ diabetic rat model in order to confirm the predicted antidiabetic effects based on the phytochemical characterization.

In order to accomplish this, fifty male Wistar rats were divided into five groups: Group 1 consisted of normal control rats (NC), group 2 of diabetic control rats (DC), group 3 of diabetic rats receiving 300 mg/kg *A. greatheadii* (DAG), group 4 of diabetic rats receiving 300 mg/kg *A. ferox* (DAF), and group 5 of diabetic rats receiving glibenclamide (DGL). After a 16 hour fast, the rats in the DC, DAG, DAF and DGL groups were injected (intraperitoneally) with 40mg/kg STZ dissolved in 0.1M cold sodium citrate buffer (pH 4.5) and left for one week, in order for diabetes to develop. Diabetes was confirmed after a 12 hour fast (blood glucose > 13.875mmol/L or 250mg/dL) by measuring blood glucose from a cut to the tail. The *A. ferox* ELGE, *A greatheadii* ELGE and glibenclamide were given with an intragastric tube once daily for 5 weeks during which the rats had unlimited access to food and water. At the end of the intervention period, the rats were sacrificed and tissue and blood samples were collected. The effects of these interventions on the STZ induced diabetic state was monitored by measurement of various biochemical diabetes markers which included: serum

glucose, insulin, insulin resistance, fructosamine, triacylglycerol (TG), total cholesterol (TC), high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C), low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C), very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (VLDL-C), alanine transaminase (ALT), alkaline phophatase (ALP), ferric reducing antioxidant power (FRAP), and diacron reactive metabolites (dROMs).

Results: GC-MS and spectrophotometric analyses revealed a wide range of compounds with potential health benefits in both *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* LGE and ELGE. GC-MS analysis revealed that separate ethyl acetate/diethyl ether and hexane extractions of the LGE, is better suited to general phytochemical characterization purposes, whereas 95% aqueous ethanol extraction effectively concentrated selective groups of health related compounds, hence justifying its application to biological *in vivo* efficacy studies. Apart from these health related phytochemicals, sugar determinations revealed that *A. ferox* ELGE consisted of 96.9% sugar and *A. greatheadii* ELGE consisted of 83.75% sugar.

In the animal study, diabetes was confirmed one week after the injection of 40 mg/kg STZ by measuring fasting glucose concentrations via a cut to the tail. Compared to the NC group, STZ resulted in increased relative liver and kidney mass, end-point plasma glucose, fructosamine, oxidative stress, liver enzymes, total cholesterol, triglycerides, VLDL-C, and TC:HDL-C values, and reduced serum insulin levels. The majority of these diabetes markers, including fasting end-point glucose concentrations, fasting serum insulin levels, insulin resistance, and lipid levels, returned to near normal levels with glibenclamide supplementation, confirming that STZ injections resulted in an insulin independent diabetes that closely resembles type 2 diabetes biochemical abnormalities in human subjects.

Treatment with *A. greatheadii* moderately increased serum insulin accompanied by a modest decreased end-point plasma glucose and decreased liver enzyme ALP, in addition to moderately increased HDL-C and decreased TC:HDL-C values. *A. ferox* supplementation resulted in moderately increased serum insulin, accompanied by slight corrections in ALP and HDL-C, however, without a decrease in end-point plasma glucose. Little effect was seen on other diabetes markers.

Conclusion: Oral administration of the *Aloe* extracts, *A. greatheadii* in particular, resulted in moderate improvements in the STZ induced diabetic state, especially when considering the changes observed in the end-point plasma glucose and serum insulin levels, hence, justifying further investigations into the use of these traditional remedies for the treatment of diabetes. However, considering the phytochemical contents and previous literature using other *Aloe* species, more significant results were expected. Consequently, it is proposed that these effects should be studied using higher dosages, longer intervention periods, alternative extracts and perhaps larger sample groups for future antidiabetic investigations using these indigenous plants.

Key words: *Aloe*; GC-MS; Phytochemical characterization; Type 2 diabetes; Streptozotocin; Ethanol extracts

AFRIKAANSE TITEL: Die fitochemikalie-inhoud en anti-diabetiese eienskappe van *Aloe ferox* en *Aloe greatheadii* var. davyanna

OPSOMMING

Motivering: Diabetes mellitus is 'n nie-oordraagbare siekte wat gesien word as een van die vyf hoof oorsake van streftes wêreld wyd, en word gekenmerk deur hiperglukemie en hiperlipidemie as gevolg van veranderde glukose- en lipiedmetabolisme. Die soeke na meer gepaste anti-diabetiese middels het onlangs begin fokus op plante wat gebruik word in tradisionele medikasie. Aalwyn spesies word al vir eeue gebruik in die behandeling van verskeie siektes, insluitend diabetes. Die oorgrote meerderheid van die wetenskaplik-gebasseerde navorsing op hierdie onderwerp is op *Aloe vera* (of *Aloe barbadensis*) en *Aloe arborescens* gedoen. Die tipe aalwyn wat as tradisionele medisyne in landelike gemeenskappe gebruik word, hang van die onmiddellike beskikbaarheid in die spesifieke gemeenskap af. Daarom sal gemeenskappe in verskillende dele van die wêreld die aalwyn spesie gebruik wat inheems is tot die onmiddelike omgewing. *Aloe ferox* (inheems tot die Westelike provinsies van Suid Afrika) en *Aloe greatheadii* var. davyana (inheems tot die Noordelike provinsies van Suid Afrika) word tans geredelik deur die landelike gemeenskappe van Suid Afrika vir die behandeling van diabetes gebruik, al is daar baie min wetenskaplike bewyse om die gebruik daarvan te staaf. Verskillende aalwyn spesies sal verskillende fitochemikalie-inhoude, gesondheidsvoordele, en moontlike toksisiteite hê. Daarom is dit besonder relevant vir wetenskaplikes, die industrie, en landelike gemeenskappe om die relevante medisinale gebruike van die inheemse alwyn spesies, asook die aktiewe komponente en die individuele of gekombineerde meganismes van biologiese funksie, te ondersoek.

Doelwitte: Die hoof doelwit van die studie was om die antidiabetiese effekte van *A. ferox* en *A. greatheadii* etanol blaar jel ekstrakte te bepaal en te vergelyk deur gebruik te maak van 'n streptozotocin (STZ)-geïnduseerde diabetiese rotmodel. Om 'n funksionele liggaam van bewyse vir die bogenoemde te verskaf, sluit 'n sekondêre doelwit die karakterisering en vergelyking van die fitochemikalie-inhoud van *A. ferox* en *A.*

greatheadii blaar jel ekstrak en 95% etanol blaar jel-ekstrak in, deur gebruik te maak van gas chromatografie-massa-spektrometrie (GC-MS) en spektrofotometrie.

Metodes: Die fitochemiekalie-inhoud van 'n watersuspensie van die blaar jel-ekstrak en etanol blaar jel-ekstrak is geanaliseer via standaard ekstraksie-metodes deur van GC-MS (Agilent, VSA) en spektrofotometrie (Shimadzu UV-1601 spektrofotometer) gebruik te maak. Die ekstrak met die meeste antidiabetiese komponente,op grond van die fitochemikalie-inhoud,is gekies om in die intervensie te gebruik. Die intervensie is gedoen deur gebruik te maak van 'n STZ diabetiese rot-model om die moontlike antidiabetiese effekte te bevestig.

Vir hierdie doel is vyftig mannetjies Wistar rotte in vyf groepe verdeel: Groep 1 het bestaan uit normaal kontrole rotte (NK), groep 2 uit diabetiese kontrole rotte (DK), groep 3 uit diabetiese rotte wat 300 mg/kg *A. greatheadii* ekstrak ontvang het (DAG), groep 4 uit diabetiese rotte wat 300 mg/kg *A. ferox* ekstrak ontvang het (DAF), en groep 5 het bestaan uit diabetiese rotte wat glibenklamied ontvang het (DGL). Na 'n 16 uur vas is die rotte in die DK, DAG, DAF en DGL groepe met 40mg/kg STZ opgelos in 0.1M koue natriumsitraat-buffer (pH 4.5) ingespuit (intraperitoniaal) en gelos vir een week vir diabetes om te ontwikkel. Diabetes is bevestig na 'n 12 uur vas (bloed glukose > 13.875 mmol/L of 250mg/dL) deur bloedglukose te meet via 'n sny aan die stert. *A. ferox* en *A. greatheadii* blaar jel-ekstrakte en glibenklamied is een keer per dag vir vyf weke met 'n intragastriese buis toegedien, waartydens die rotte onbeperkte toegang tot kos en water gehad het. Aan die einde van die intervensieperiode is die rotte dood gemaak en weefsel- en bloedmonsters is versamel. Die effekte van die intervensies op STZ-geïnduseerde diabetiese toestand is ondersoek deur die bepaling van verskeie biochemiese diabetesmerkers insluitend: serumglukose, insulien, insulien weerstandigheid, fruktosamien, triasielgliserol (TG), totale cholesterol (TC) hoë-digtheidslipoproteïen-cholesterol (HDL-C), lae-digtheidslipoproteïen-cholestrerol (LDL-C), baie lae-digtheidslipoproteïen-cholestrerol (VLDL-C), alanien transaminase (ALT), alkalien fosfatase (ALP), "ferric redusing antioxidant power (FRAP)", en "diacron reactive metabolites (dROMs).

Resultate: GC-MS- en spektrofotometriese- analises het 'n groot verskeidenheid komponente met potensiële gesondheidsvoordele in *A. ferox* en *A. greatheadii* blaar jel-ekstrak en etanol blaar jelekstrak, getoon. GC-MS analises het getoon dat aparte etiel asetaat/di-etiel eter en heksaan-ekstraksies van die blaar jel-ekstrak meer geskik vir algemene fitochemikalie-karakteriseringsdoeleindes is, en dat die 95% water etanol ekstraksie sekere komponente met gesondheidsvoordele meer effektief gekonsentreer het om die gebruik daarvan in biologiese *in vivo* studies te regverdig. Suikerbepalings het getoon dat *A. ferox* etanol blaar jel-ekstrak uit 96.9% suiker bestaan het en *A. greatheadii* blaar jel-ekstrak uit 83.75% suiker bestaan het.

In die dierestudie is diabetes een week na die inspuiting van 40 mg/kg STZ bevestig deur vastende glukosekonsentrasies met 'n sny aan die stert te bepaal. Al die diabetes merkers, insluitend vastende eind-punt glukosekonsentrasies, vastende seruminsulinvlakke, insulienweerstand, en lipiedvlakke, het terug gekeer na so te sê normale vlakke met glibenklamied-supplementasie, wat bevestig dat die STZ inspuitings wel diabetes wat vergelykbaar is met tipe 2 diabetes in mense, veroorsaak het.

In vergelyking met die NK groep het STZ verhoogde relatiewe lewer- en niermassa, eindpunt glukosewaardes, fruktosamien, oksidatiewe stres, lewerensieme, TC, TG, VLDL-C, en TC:HDL- C waardes en verlaagde seruminsulienvlakke tot gevolg gehad. Behandeling met *A. greatheadii* het seruminsulien matig verhoog en eindpunt glukosevlakke, lewerensiem ALP en TC:HDL-C matig verlaag, en HDL-C matig verhoog . *A. ferox* supplementasie het serum insulien matig verhoog, en 'n matige herstel in ALP en HDL-C, sonder a verlaging in eindpunt glukose tot gevolg gehad. Amper geen effekte is gesien op ander diabetes merkers nie. Glibenklamied het tot die herstel van amper al die diabetesmerkers gelei, met verhoogde insuliensekresie wat tot normalisering van eindpunt bloedglukosewaardes en 'n herstel van die diabetes-geïnduseerde hiperlipidemie gelei het.

Gevolgtrekking: Orale toediening van die aalwyn ekstrakte, spesifiek *A. greatheadii*, het gelei tot matige verbeteringe in die STZ geïnduseerde diabetiese toestand, veral wanneer

die verandering in die eindpunt plasmaglukose en seruminsulienwaardes oorweeg word. Dus regverdig dit verdere navorsing in die gebruik van hierdie tradisionele medikasie vir die behandeling van diabetes. Wanneer die fitochemikalie-inhoud en vorige literatuur wat ander aalwyn spesies gebruik het, egter oorweeg word, is meer betekenisvolle resultate verwag. As gevolg hiervan word die studie van hierdie effekte, deur gebruik te maak van hoër dosisse, langer intervensie periodes, alternatiewe ekstrakte en moontlik groter groepgroottes vir toekomstige anti-diabetiese navorsing van hierdie inheemse plante, voorgestel.

Sleutelwoorde

Aalwyn; GC-MS; Fitochemikalie-karakterisering; Tipe 2 diabetes; Streptozotocin; Etanol ekstrak

Table of contents	Page

Table of contents (cont.) **Page**

Table of contents (cont.) **Page**

Table of contents (cont.)		Page

Addendum

List of tables

List of tables (cont.) **Page**

List of figures	Page

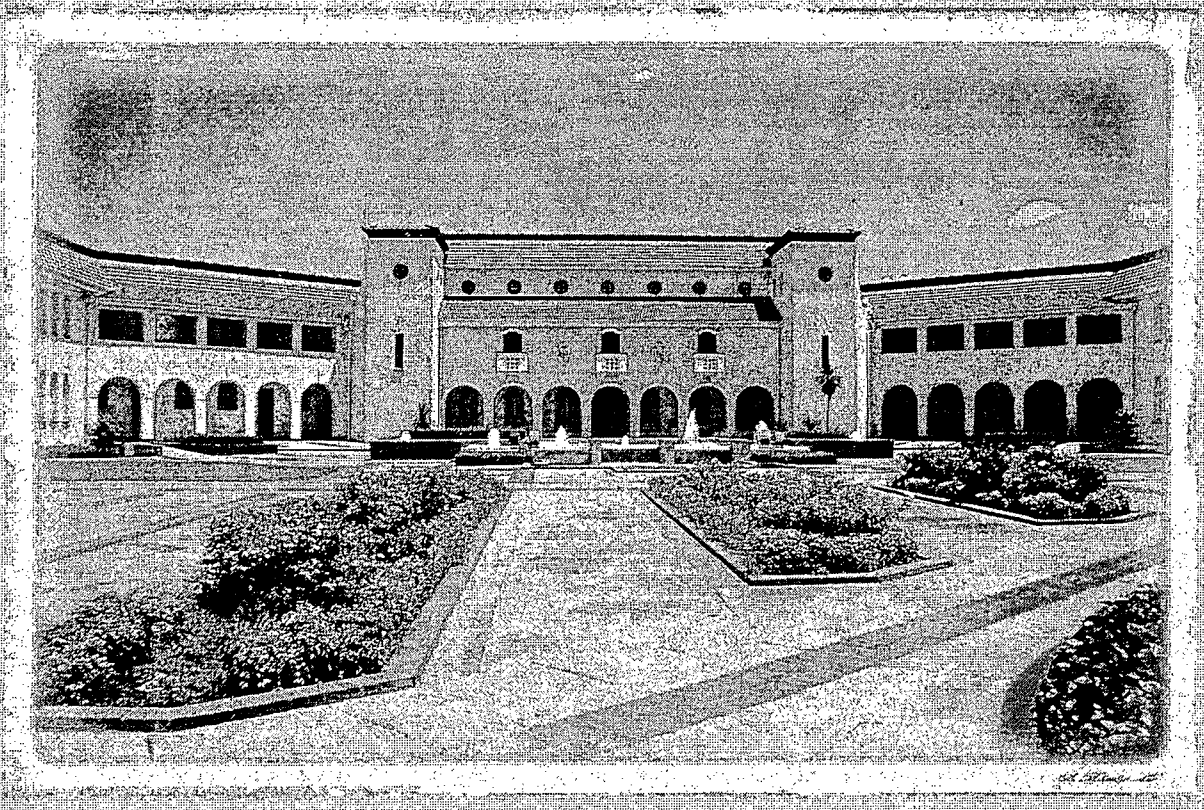
Chapter 2

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

ABBREVIATION	DESCRIPTION
A. arborescens	*Aloe arborescens*
ACAT	Acyl CoA: cholesterol acyltransferase
ACE/AACE	American College of Endocrinologists/American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists
ADA	American Diabetic Association
ADP	Adenosine diphosphate
A. ferox	*Aloe ferox*
A. greatheadii	*Aloe greatheadii*
AGE	Advanced glycation endproducts
ALP	Alkaline phosphatase
ALT	Alanine transaminase
ALX	Alloxan
AMP	Adenosine monophosphate
AMPK	Adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase
ANCOVA	Analysis of variance
ANOVA	Analysis of co-variance
ATP	Adenosine triphosphate
A. vera	*Aloe vera*
BMI	Body mass index
BSTFA	bis (trimethylsilyl) trifloroacetamide
CAT	Catalase
CE	Catechin equivalents
CHD	Coronary heart disease
CVD	Cardiovascular disease
DAF	Diabetic rats receiving *A. ferox*
DAG	Diabetic rats receiving *A. greatheadii*
DC	Diabetic control
DCCT	Diabetic Control and Complications.Trial
DK	Diabetiese kontrole
DNA	Deoxiribonucleic acid
dROM	Diacron reactive metabolites
ELGE	Ethanol leaf gel extract
ET-1	Endothelin-1
$FADH_2$	Flavine adenine dinucleotide

ABBREVIATION	DESCRIPTION
FFA	Free fatty acid
FRAP	Ferric reducing antioxidant power
GAPDH	Glyceraldehyde phosphate dehydrogenase
GAE	Gallic acid equivalents
GC-MS	Gas chromography mass spectrometry
GLUT4	Glucose transporter 4
GPx	Glutathion peroxidase
GSH	Reduced glutathione
GST	Glutathione-s-transferase
HbA_{1c}	Haemoglobin A_{1c}
HDL-C	High-density lipoprotein cholesterol
HNF	Hepatocyte nuclear factor
HOMA	Homeostasis assessment model
HPO	Horseradish peroxidase
HSL	Hormone sensitive lipase
IDL	Intermediate density lipoproteins
LDL-C	Low-density lipoprotein cholesterol
LGE	Leaf gel extract
MSG	Monosodium glutamate
NADH	Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide
NADPH	Nicotinamide adenine dinucletide phosphate
NC	Normal control
NF	Nuclear factor
NC	Normaal kontrole
NO	Nitric oxide
NOS	Nitric oxide synthase
OGTT	Oral glucose tolerance test
ORAC	Oxygen radical absorbance capacity
PAI-1	Plasminogen activator inhibitor-1
PKC	Protein kinase C
PPAR	Peroxisome proliferators activated receptors
PVD	Peripheral vascular disease
ROS	Reactive oxygen species
SOD	Superoxide dismutase
STZ	Streptozotocin

ABBREVIATION	DESCRIPTION
STZ	Streptozotocin
TC	Total cholesterol
TCA	Tricarboxylic acid
TE	Trolox equivalents
TG	Triglycerides
TGF	Tumour growth factor
TMCS	Trimethylchlorosilane
UDP	Uridine diphosphate
UKPDS	United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study
VEGF	Vascular endothelial growth factor
VLDL-C	Very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol
WHO	World Health Organization
α	Alpha
β	Beta



Chapter 1

Preface

1. BACKGROUND AND MOTIVATION

According to the World Health Organization (WHO), diabetes can be defined as persistent hyperglycaemia as a result of decreased insulin secretion (WHO Department of Non Communicable Disease Surveillance, 1999). Symptoms include excessive thirst, weight loss, increased urine volumes, recurrent infections, unexplained weight loss, drowsiness, coma, and high levels of glucosuria, and these may prompt further tests in order to delineate a positive or negative diagnosis of diabetes (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). Two types of diabetes can be diagnosed as a result of either; 1) complete β-cell destruction (type 1 diabetes) with severely diminished insulin secretion and the dependency on exogenous insulin, or 2) diminished tissue sensitivity to insulin together with impaired β-cell function (type 2 diabetes), which is worsened by obesity, often treatable with diet and exercise without medical intervention (WHO Department of Non Communicable Disease Surveillance, 1999), however, if left untreated, may worsen into an insulin dependent diabetic state.

For the purpose of this thesis, the remaining literature and discussion will focus mainly on type 2 diabetes.

Diabetes mellitus is considered to be one of the main threats to human health (Zimmet, 2001) and is classified as one of the 5 leading causes of death in developed countries (Amos *et al.,* 1987). Figures reported by the International Diabetes Federation in 2006 paint a grim picture with an estimation of 333 million people expected to be diagnosed with diabetes by 2025 (International Diabetes Federation, 2006). The amount of diagnosed cases in Africa is set to rise from 7 million reported in 2003, to 15 million by the year 2025 (International Diabetes Federation 2006).

The ultimate aim of diabetes management is strict glucose control. Literature suggests that this can be accomplished through lifestyle interventions including weight management, the correct diet, physical activity, and medical management (The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group, 1993; Nathan *et al.,* 2009). With reference to the above, hypoglycaemic agents (Luna & Feinglos, 2001), antioxidant therapy (Wohaieb & Godin, 1987; Koya *et al.,* 1997; Studer *et al.,* 1997; Bursell *et al.,* 1999; Cameron & Cotter, 1999; Kowrulu & Kenedy, 2001) and poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) inhibitors (Brownlee, 2005) can be used to achieve this. The American Diabetes Association recommends that fasting blood glucose levels should be maintained at, or corrected to 4.44 – 6.10 mmol/L (70 – 100 mg/dL) (American Diabetes Association, 2002).

The populations of developing countries worldwide continue to rely heavily on the use of traditional medicine as their primary source of healthcare (Cunningham, 1993). Our interest lies in finding plants indigenous to South Africa, with possible medicinal applications with regards to diabetes, hence the interest in *Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana.* Since the preparation of these plants to treat diabetes varies from various tea extracts to dried leaf preparations, it was very difficult to compare the different preparations to each other and the literature. Hence our decision to investigate the anti-diabetic effects of *Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* using extracts similar to extracts previously described in literature investigating its anti-diabetic properties. *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* var. *davyana* (indigenous to Western Cape and the Northern Provinces of South Africa) are used among rural South African communities for the treatment of diabetes (personal communication with traditional healers). These treatments are based on anecdotal evidence or research findings done almost exclusively on *Aloe* vera. Different *Aloe* species would have varying phytochemical contents, health benefits and possible toxicities. Hence, the investigation of research of the relevant medicinal uses of indigenous *Aloe* species, as well as the determination of the active components and their individual or combined mechanisms of biological function may be of relevance for scientists, industry and rural communities.

2. AIMS AND OBJECTIVES OF THE STUDY

2.1. Aim

The aim of the study was to determine whether *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* var. *davyana* contained certain substances with antidiabetic activity, justifying their use as traditional antidiabetic medication.

2.2. Objectives

The above-mentioned aim will be accomplished by completion of the following objectives:

1. To characterize and compare the phytochemical composition of *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* leaf gel extract (LGE) and 95% ethanol leaf gel extract (ELGE) using gas chromatography mass spectrometry (GC-MS) and spectrophotometry, in order to substantiate possible antidiabetic activity and optimal extraction conditions based on the analysed phytochemcial contents of these two extracts.

2. To determine the antidiabetic action of a suitable extract (identified above) using a STZ-induced diabetic rat model, by the measurement of various biochemical diabetes markers related to diabetes induced abnormalities in blood glucose, lipid, insulin, and liver enzyme levels, and correlate this biological activity to the phytochemical composition analysed.

3. STRUCTURE OF THESIS

Ethical approval for the study was obtained from the Ethical Committee of the North West University. The reference number for the study is: 06D06. This thesis is a

compilation of chapters written specifically to comply with the requirements of the North-West University, Potchefstroom Campus and the journals to which manuscripts were submitted for publication. In particular, directives in terms of English language usage, formatting and bibliography styles were adhered to. All chapters will have their own reference index.

Following this chapter, Chapter 2 provides background information necessary for the interpretation of the data in the articles that follow. An overview of the pathogenesis and management of diabetes is given. Furthermore, possible anti-diabetic effects of different *Aloe* species using mainly STZ-induced diabetic animal models will be discussed.

Chapter 3 comprises a published manuscript (Loots *et al.*, 2007 - Journal of Agricultural Food Chemistry) describing the phytochemicals in *A. ferox* LGE and ELGE characterized using GC-MS and spectophotometric methods. In this chapter the phytochemical contents of the two extracts of *A. ferox* are discussed and compared in order to determine if these contain phytochemicals with health related benefits and which of these extraction procedures function best in extracting these compounds.

Chapter 4 comprises a published manuscript (Botes *et al.*, 2008 - Molecules) describing the phytochemicals in *A. greatheadii* var *davyana* LGE and ELGE, also characterized using GC-MS and spectophotometric methods. In this chapter the phytochemical contents of the two extracts of *A. greatheadii* are discussed and compared in order to determine if these contain phytochemicals with health related benefits and which of these extraction procedures function best in extracting these compounds, and how these compare to that of *A. ferox* as described in the publication of Chapter 3.

Chapter 5 consists of the manuscript describing the anti-diabetic action of the above-mentioned *A. ferox* ethanol leaf gel extract (ELGE) and *A. greatheadii* ELGE

comparatively, in a STZ-induced diabetic rat model. This was done in order to determine whether these extracts truly show antidiabetic action, as was predicted by their phytochemical contents in Chapters 3 and 4. The manuscript was submitted for publication to The Journal of Agricultural Food Chemistry and is currently in review.

Chapter 6 is an integrated discussion and conclusion of the results of Chapters 3, 4, and 5. Recommendations regarding further research and practical applications are additionally made in this chapter. Attached as an addendum are the *Instructions for Authors* concerning the requirements of the specific journals for the 3 manuscripts as requested by the North-West University.

4. Authors contributions

The principal author of this thesis is Ms L Botes. The contribution of the co-authors and co-workers made towards this is given in **Table 1**.

The following is a statement from the co-authors confirming their individual roles in the study and giving their permission that the publications generated may form part of this thesis.

I declare that I have approved the above-mentioned publications and that my role in the study as indicated above is representative of my actual contribution and that I hereby give my consent that these may be published as part of the Ph.D. thesis of Lisa Botes.

Prof Du Toit Loots

Prof Marlien Pieters

Prof Francois van der Westhuizen

Dr Shahidul Islam

4. Authors contributions

The principal author of this thesis is Ms L Botes. The contribution the co-authors and co-workers made towards this is given in **Table 1.**

The following is a statement from the co-authors confirming their individual roles in the study and giving their permission that the publications generated may form part of this thesis.

I declare that I have approved the above mentioned publications and that my role in the study as indicated above is representative of my actual contribution and that I hereby give my consent that these may be published as part of the Ph.D. thesis of Lisa Botes.

Prof Du Toit Loots

Prof Marlien Pieters

Prof Francois van der Westhuizen

Dr Shahidul Islam

Table 1

Research Team

Co-author	Co-worker	Contribution
L. Botes (M.Sc. Dietetics)	-	Responsible, together with Prof. Du T. Loots, for literature searches, designing, planning, execution, data and statistical analyses, writing of all publications and documentation of the study.
Prof. Du T. Loots (Ph.D. Biochemistry)	-	Promoter: Guidance all aspects of the study: designing, planning, execution, writing of all publications and documentation of the study.
Prof. M. Pieters (Ph.D. Nutrition)	-	Co-promoter: Guidance in designing, planning, execution, statistical analyses, publication of chapter 3 and documentation of the study.
Prof F.H. van der Westhuizen (Ph.D Biochemistry)	-	Assisting with the biochemical analyses relating to oxidative stress as well as co-author to the publications in Chapters 3 and 4.
Dr. S. Islam (Ph.D. Biochemistry)	-	Assisting with the handling, dosing, and sacrificing of the rats. Assisting with the collection of data and co-author of the manuscript in Chapter 5.
-	Mnr. C. Bester (Experimental Animal Centre)	Guidance and collaboration in the care and handling of the experimental animals.
	Mrs. A. Fick (Experimental Animal Centre)	Guidance and collaboration in the care and handling of the experimental animals.

5. LITERATURE CITED

AMERICAN DIABETES ASSICIATION. 2002. Standards of medical care for patients with diabetes. *Diabetes care,* 25 (Suppl.1):S33-S49.

AMOS A., MCCARTY D., ZIMMET P. 1987. The rising global burden of diabetes and its complications: estimates and projections to the year 2010. *Diabetic Medicine*, 14: S1–S85.

BOTES L., VAN DER WESTHUIZEN F.H., LOOTS DU T. 2008. Phytochemical content and antioxidant capacities of two *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* extracts. *Molecules,* 13:2169-2180.

BOTES L., PIETERS M., ISLAM M.D.S., LOOTS DU T. Antidiabetic effects of *Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* leaf gel extracts in a streptozotocin diabetes rat model. *Journal of agricultural and food chemistry.* In review

BROWNLEE M. 2005. Banting lecture 2004: The pathology of diabetic complications. A unifying mechanism. *Diabetes,* 54:1615-1625.

BURSELL S.E., CLERMONT A.C., AIELLO L.P., AIELLO L.M., SCHLOSSMAN D.K., FEENER E.P., LAFFEL L., KING G.L. 1999. High-dose vitamin E supplementation normalizes retinal blood flow and creatinine clearance in patients with type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes care,* 22:1245-1251.

CAMERON N.E AND COTTER M.A. 1999. Effects of antioxidants on nerve and vascular dysfunction in experimental diabetes. *Diabetes research and clinical practice*, 45:137-146.

CUNNINGHAM A.B. 1993. African medical plants: setting priorities at the interface between conservation and primary healthcare. People and plants working paper 1. UNESCO, Paris.

INTERNATIONAL DIABETES FEDERATION. 2006. Diabetes atlas. [Web:] http://www.idf.org/ (Date used: 31 Sept. 2007).

KOWLURU R.A AND KENNEDY A. 2001. Therapeutic potential of anti-oxidants and diabetic retinopathy. *Expert opinion in investigational drugs,* 10:1665-1676.

KOYA D., LEE I.K., ISHII H., KANOH H., KING G.L. 1997. Prevention of glomerular dysfunction in diabetic rats by treatment with d-alpha-tocopherol. *Journal of the American society of nephrology,* 8:426-435.

LOOTS DU T., VAN DER WESTHUIZEN F.H., BOTES L. 2007. *Aloe ferox* leaf gel phytochemical content, antioxidant capacity, and possible health benefits. *Journal of agricultural food chemistry,* 55:6891-6896.

LUNA B AND FEINGLOS M.N. 2001. Oral agents in the management of type 2 diabetes mellitus. *American family physician,* 63(9):1747-1756.

NATHAN D.M., BUSE J.B., DAVIDSON M.B., FERRANNINI E., HOLMAN R.R., SHERWIN R., ZINMAN B. 2009. Medical management of hyperglycaemia in type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy. *Diabetes care,* 32:193-203.

STUDER R.K., CRAVEN P.A., DERUBERTIS F.R. 1997. Antioxidant inhibition of protein kinase C-signaled increases in transforming growth factor-beta in mesangial cells. *Metabolism,* 46:918-925.

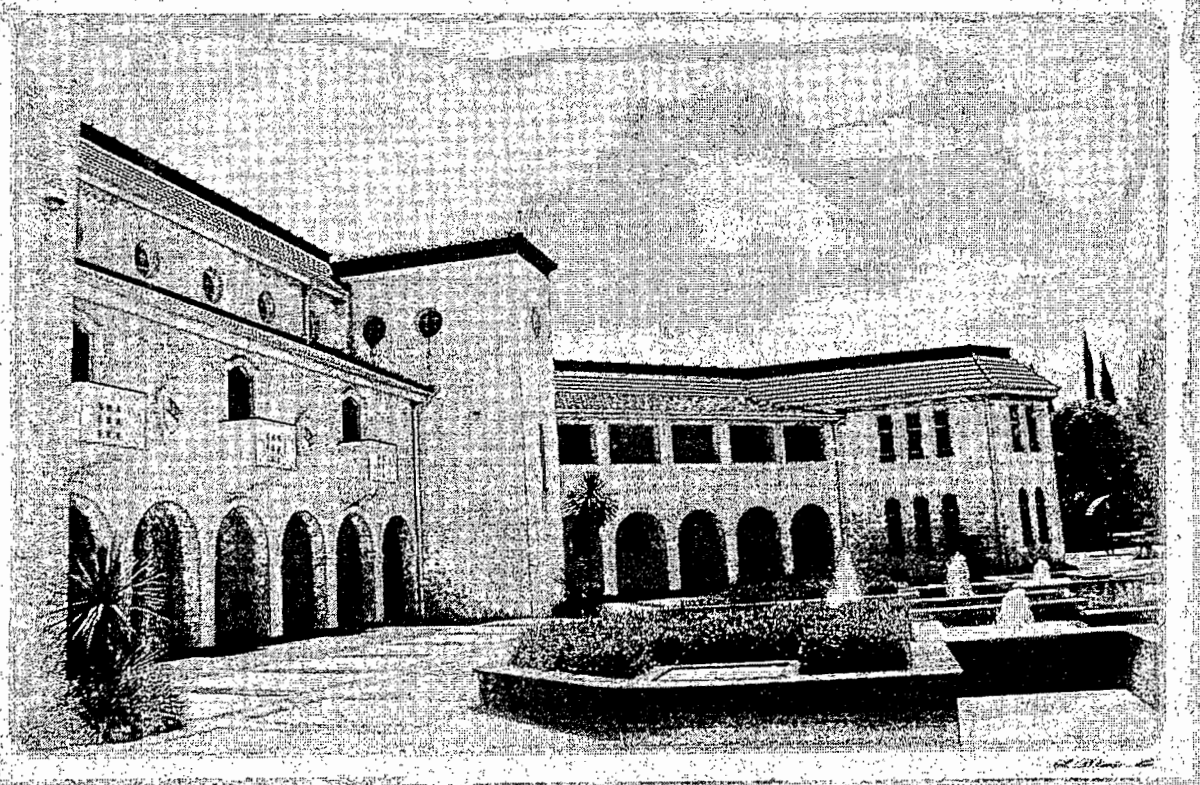
THE DIABETES CONTROL AND COMPLICATIONS TRIAL RESEARCH GROUP. 1993. The effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the development and progression of long-term complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *New England journal of medicine,* 329:977-986.

THE EXPERT COMMITTEE ON THE DIAGNOSIS AND CLASSIFICATION OF DIABETES MELLITUS. 2002. Report of the expert committee on the diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care*, 25(Suppl. 1):S5-S20.

WHO Department of Noncommunicable Disease Surveillance. 1999. definition and diagnosis of diabetes mellitus and intermediate hyperglycemia: RepoRt of a WHo/IDf ConsultatIon.

WOHAIEB S.A AND GODIN D.V. 1987. Alterations in free radical tissue-defense mechanisms in streptozocin-induced diabetes in rat. Effects of insulin treatment. *Diabetes,* 36:1014-1018.

ZIMMET P., ALBERTI K.G., SHAW J. 2001. Global and social implications of the diabetes epidemic. *Nature,* 414:782-787.



Chapter 2

Literature Review

1. INTRODUCTION

Diabetes mellitus, long considered a disease of minor significance to world health, is now taking its place as one of the main threats to human health in the 21st century (Zimmet *et al.*, 2001). It is the most common non-communicable disease worldwide and one of the top five leading causes of death in developed countries (Amos *et al.*, 1987). The global figure of people with diabetes is set to rise from the estimated of 194 million in 2003, to 333 million in 2025 (International Diabetes Federation 2006). In Africa alone, approximately 7 million people between the ages of 20 and 79 were diagnosed with diabetes in 2003 and this figure is expected to rise to approximately 15 million in 2025 (International Diabetes Federation 2006).

Aloe species have been used for centuries for their laxative, anti-inflammatory, immuno-stimulant, antiseptic (Capasso *et al.*, 1998), wound and burn healing (Chithra *et al.*, 1998), anti-ulcer (Koo, 1994), anti-tumor (Saito, 1993) and especially anti-diabetic (Bunyapraphatsara *et al.*, 1996) properties. Many of these applications have been attributed to *Aloe's* antioxidant phytochemicals (Reynolds & Dweck, 1999). However, these plants have been reported to contain various other compounds which function via a variety of alternative mechanisms such as antibacterial agents, antimicrobial agents (De Oliviera *et al.*, 2008), and cathartic agents (Kametani *et al.*, 2007). Although *Aloe vera* is the species most extensively described in the literature, the possibility of discovering useful properties among the more than 300 other *Aloe* species used as traditional medicines and as ingredients to commercial tonics is enough to excite curiosity.

This literature review will discuss diabetes and the underlying biochemical mechanisms associated with this disease, the traditional use of *Aloe* as a diabetes treatment and the mechanisms involved in their action (relating this

to their phytochemical content), in addition to the use of diabetes animal models as a tool in diabetes research.

2. DIABETES MELLITUS

2.1. Introduction

The first accepted definitions of diabetes were published by the National Diabetes Data Group in 1979 (National Diabetes Data Group, 1979) followed by the World Health Organization (WHO) in 1980. Currently, diabetes mellitus can be defined as "a chronic disease", which occurs when the pancreas does not produce enough insulin, or when the body cannot effectively use the insulin it produces. This leads to an increased concentration of glucose in the blood (hyperglycaemia) (WHO Department of Non Communicable Disease Surveillance, 1999). This may subsequently lead to further liver, kidney and pancreatic β-cell damage, as well as abnormal carbohydrate, protein and fat metabolism (Baynes, 1991; The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial research group, 1993; UK Prospective Diabetes Study research group, 1998; Brownlee, 2003). Diabetes can additionally be characterized by excessive thirst, weight loss, and in some cases progressive destruction of small blood vessels leading to such complications as infections and gangrene of the limbs or blindness (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). Type 1 diabetes (previously referred to as insulin-dependent or childhood-onset diabetes), is a more severe form of diabetes mellitus in which insulin production by the β-cells of the pancreas is impaired, usually resulting in dependence on externally administered insulin. Type 2 diabetes (formerly called non-insulin-dependent or adult-onset diabetes) is the milder, sometimes asymptomatic form, characterized by diminished tissue sensitivity to insulin

and sometimes by impaired β-cell function, exacerbated by obesity and often treatable through diet and exercise (WHO, 1999).

In the sections to follow, the pathophysiology, complications and the diagnosis and management of diabetes mellitus will be discussed.

2.2. Pathophysiology of diabetes mellitus

The clinical diagnosis of diabetes is often prompted by symptoms of increased thirst and urine volumes, recurrent infections, unexplained weight loss, and in severe cases, drowsiness and coma where high levels of glucosuria are usually present. Due to the impact of diabetes on the lifestyle of an affected individual, the criteria used to make a diagnosis must be highly robust in order to omit as few people as possible who may have diabetes, while preventing any false positive diagnoses in others. Even though an individual's diurnal blood glucose levels vary continuously, dependent on food intake as well as the body's homeostatic responses, it is still used as the main criteria for diagnosing diabetes (Kernohan *et al.,* 2003). The diagnostic criteria for diabetes mellitus have been modified from those previously recommended by the National Diabetes Data Group (National Diabetes Data Group, 1979) or the World Health Organization (WHO, 1985). According to the Expert Committee on the diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus, revised criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes include three possible ways to diagnose this disease **(Table 1)**.

Table 1

Criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002).

1. Symptoms of diabetes plus a casual plasma glucose concentration of 11.1mmol.L (200mg/dL), where casual is defined as any time of day without regard to time since the last meal. The classic symptoms of diabetes include polyuria, polydipsia and unexplained weight loss.

Or

2. Fasting plasma glucose ≥ 7.0mmol/L (126mg/dl). Fasting is defined as no caloric intake for at least 8 hours.

Or

3. 2 hour plasma glucose ≥ 11.1mmol/L (200mg/dl) during an oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT). The test should be performed as described by the WHO, using a glucose load containing the equivalent of 75g anhydrous glucose dissolved in water (WHO, 1985).

In the absence of unequivocal hyperglycaemia with acute metabolic decompensation, these criteria should be confirmed by repeat testing on a different day. The OGTT is not recommended for routine clinical use.

In addition to the above-mentioned criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes, the Expert Committee for the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus recommends the testing for diabetes in asymptomatic individuals who may be at risk also (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of

Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). This includes individuals who are 45 years of age and older. Testing should also be considered at a younger age or be carried out more frequently in individuals who are overweight (BMI $\geq$ 25kg/m^2), have a first-degree relative with diabetes, are a member of a high-risk ethnic group (African-American, Hispanic American, Native American, Asian American, or Pacific Islander), have delivered a baby weighing 4.08kg (> 9lb) or have been diagnosed with gestational diabetes mellitus, are hypertensive ($\geq$ 140/90mm/Hg), have an HDL-C level $\leq$ 0.90mmol/L (35mg/dL) and/or a triglyceride level $\geq$ 2.82mmol/L (250mg/dL), or had impaired glucose tolerance or impaired fasting glucose on previous testing (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002).

As previously mentioned, diabetes mellitus is characterized by chronic hyperglycaemia, leading to disorders in carbohydrate, protein and fat metabolism (Kim *et al.,* 2006). Diabetes can be characterized as type 1 or type 2 diabetes. In type 1 diabetes the β-cells are gradually destroyed, resulting in reduced insulin production (Nair, 2007). In type 2 diabetes, the body produces enough insulin, but due to insulin resistance, glucose does not move into the cells and thus cannot be utilized to produce energy (Nair, 2007). The pancreas attempts to correct this by secreting more insulin, which ultimately results in β-cell burnout, decreased insulin production, and finally complete insulin deficiency. A person with initial type 2 diabetes may, therefore, later develop an insulin dependence due to β-cell destruction, if the condition is left untreated. In healthy individuals euglycaemia is regulated by a negative feedback system: the rise in blood glucose after carbohydrate intake stimulates insulin secretion by the β-cells of the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas, resulting in glucose uptake by the cells, and the consequent lowering of blood glucose levels. This in turn lowers insulin secretions. However, this negative feedback system may become impaired in diabetic individuals **(Figure 1)**.

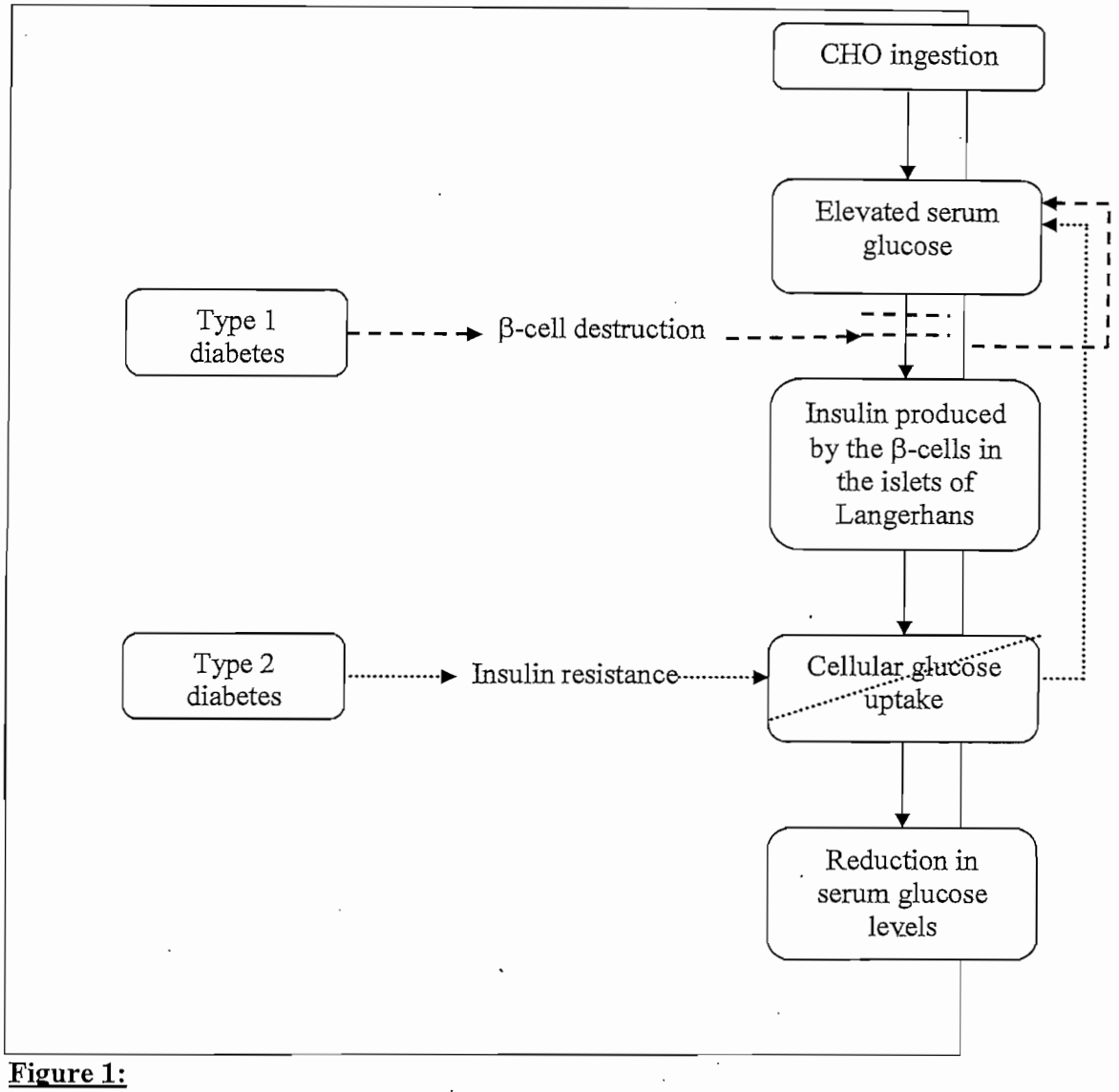


Figure 1:

Insulin control and the influence of diabetes on the negative feedback mechanisms

Under normal conditions, elevated serum glucose levels due to increased carbohydrate intake are normalised by insulin secreted by the β-cells. In type 1 diabetes, no insulin is produced due to total β-cell destruction, resulting in chronic hyperglycaemia. In type 2 diabetes, insulin resistance causes cells to be less responsive to insulin and serum glucose levels remain elevated.

Several pathogenic processes are involved in the destruction of pancreatic β-cells and ultimately the development of either type 1 and type 2 diabetes. These processes include auto-immune destruction of β-cells, insulin resistance, genetic β-cell defects, genetic defects in insulin secretion, diseases of the exocrine pancreas, endocrinopathies, and infections (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). These pathogenic processes will be discussed briefly in the following section.

2.2.1. Immune mediated disease:

Cellular-mediated auto-immune destruction of β-cells results in total destruction of pancreatic β-cells as seen in type 1 diabetes (Maclaren *et al.,* 1999; Abel & Krokowski, 2001). Markers of immune destruction of the β-cells include islet cell autoantibodies (Marker & Maclaren, 2001), autoantibodies to insulin (Maclaren *et al.,* 1999), autoantibodies to glutamic acid decarboxylase (Taplan & Barker, 2008), and autoantibodies to the tyrosine phosphatases IA-2 and IA-2β (Myers *et al.,* 1995). The rate of β-cell destruction varies and individuals may present with ketoacidosis as the first manifestation of the disease (reviewed by The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). In the presence of stress or infection, some individuals may also present with modest fasting hyperglycaemia that can rapidly change to severe fasting hyperglycaemia (reviewed by The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002).

2.2.2. Insulin resistance:

In type 2 diabetes, insulin resistance is usually associated with relative, rather than absolute insulin deficiency (Turner & Clapham, 1998), and treatment with exogenous insulin is usually not required (reviewed by The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). Although the causes for insulin resistance are not well defined, it can be accepted that autoimmune destruction of β-cells is not involved (reviewed by

The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). Obesity is present in most individuals that present with insulin resistance. Moreover, obesity itself may cause some degree of insulin resistance (Pietiläinen *et al.,* 2005; Ingelsson *et al.,* 2009). Due to the gradual development of hyperglycaemia, insulin resistance and associated type 2 diabetes may go largely undiagnosed and are usually only diagnosed in relation to stress or infection (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). The risk of the development of diabetes associated with insulin resistance increases with age, obesity and physical inactivity (Zimmet, 1992; Ferrannini *et al.,* 1997).

2.2.3. Genetic β-cell defects:

Several forms of diabetes are associated with defects in β-cell function and are associated with the early onset of hyperglycaemia (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). This type of diabetes is characterized by impaired insulin secretion with minimal or no defects in insulin action (Bell & Polonsky, 2001). To date, abnormalities at three genetic loci on different chromosomes have been identified: 1) mutations on chromosome 12 in a hepatic transcription factor referred to as hepatocyte nuclear factor (HNF)-1α; 2) mutations in the glucokinase gene on chromosome 7p resulting in a defective glucokinase molecule and; 3) mutations in the HNF-4α gene on chromosome 20q (reviewed by The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002).

2.2.4. Genetic defects in insulin action:

Formerly known as type A insulin resistance, genetic abnormalities in insulin action as a result of mutations of the insulin receptor may range from hyperinsulinaemia with modest hyperglycaemia, to severe diabetes (Maclaren *et al.,* 1999; reviewed by The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). It is assumed that these result from

lesions residing in the postreceptor signal transduction pathways of these genes.

2.2.5. Diseases of the exocrine pancreas:

Any injury to the pancreas may result in the development of diabetes (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002), and may additionally be associated with cancer, pancreatitis, trauma, infection, pancreatectomy, and pancreas carcinoma (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). Even though only extensive damage to the pancreas will result in diabetes, adenocarcinomas that involve only a small portion of the pancreas have also been associated with this disease (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002). This implies that additional mechanisms, apart from a simple reduction of β-cell mass, may also result in the development of this disease (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002).

2.2.6. Endocrinopathies:

Excessive amounts of insulin antagonizing hormones (growth hormone, cortisol, glucagon, epinephrine) may cause diabetes (The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002; Resmini *et al.*, 2009). This generally occurs in individuals with pre-existing defects in insulin secretion. Hyperglycaemia usually returns to normal when the excess hormone is removed. Diabetes, as a result of hypokalaemia induced by somatostatinoma and aldosteronoma, can generally be resolved after successful removal of the tumour (Conn, 1965, reviewed by The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2002).

2.2.7. Infections:

Certain viruses such as congenital rubella (Jun & Woon, 2001; Hyöty & Taylor, 2002), koksaki-virus B, cytomegalovirus, adenovius, and mumps, have been implicated in β-cell destruction and diabetes (Jun & Woon 2001).

A variety of complications may result from hyperglycaemia and these are broadly classified as micro and macro vascular complications. Micro vascular complications include retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy. Macro vascular complications include cardiovascular disease (CVD), peripheral vascular disease (PVD) and cerebrovascular disease. These will be described in section 5.

The mechanisms by which hyperglycaemia induces the above-mentioned micro and macro vascular complications are due to an abnormal lipid profile as well as a variety of other hyperglycaemia-induced mechanisms including the polyol pathway, advanced glycation end product (AGE) formation, the protein kinase C (PKC) pathway and the hexosamine pathway, which are all thought to be induced through oxidative stress mechanisms. These will be discussed in detail in section below. For the purpose of this thesis, the discussion will focus on type 2 diabetes as the empirical work was done using a type 2 diabetes animal model.

3. HYPERGLYCAEMIA INDUCED OXIDATIVE STRESS MECHANISMS

Diabetes mellitus related hyperglycaemia is associated with, amongst other factors, oxidative stress (Wright *et al.,* 2006). Both diabetic humans and animal models reportedly exhibit high oxidative stress due to persistent and chronic hyperglycaemia (Singh *et al.,* 2005). Chronic postprandial hyperglycaemia results in multiple biochemical reactions, of which oxidative stress, as a result of free radical production, is the best described for its role in

diabetes induction and its associated complications (Martín-Gallán *et al.*, 2002). The majority of glucose entering the cell is metabolized through glycolysis via a number of steps to acetyl Co-enzyme A, which then enters the tricarboxylic (TCA) cycle. The metabolism of glucose in the TCA cycle generates 2 electron donors: NADH, which donates electrons to complex I of the electron transport chain and flavin adenine dinucleotide ($FADH_2$), which donates electrons to complex II (Brownlee, 2005). In healthy cells, electrons from both these complexes are passed to coenzyme Q, complex III, cytochrome C, complex IV and finally to molecular oxygen, which they reduce to water (Brownlee, 2005). As the electrons pass through the electron transport chain, energy is generated in the form of adenosine tri-phosphate (ATP) (Brownlee, 2005). However, in diabetes, high amounts of glucose are being oxidized in the TCA cycle, resulting in an over-influx of reduced NADH and reduced $FADH_2$ into the electron transport chain (Korshunov *et al.*, 1997, Brownlee, 2005). This causes the electrons to back-up at coenzyme Q, which diverts the electrons to molecular oxygen, thereby generating super oxides (Brownlee, 2005), consequently causing oxidative stress. Super oxides, in turn, are responsible for the formation of other free radicals such as hydroperoxides and peroxides, which also result in mitochondrial damage and cell apoptosis (Brownlee, 2005). In effect, this results in a decreased production of ATP, and in turn a reduction in the ATP/ADP ratio (Brownlee, 2005), leading to β-cell destruction and ultimately decreased insulin secretion by the β-cells (Ceriello & Motz, 2004). The free radicals, in particular superoxide production, exert their damaging effects through various mechanisms. It is thought to inhibit the rate limiting enzyme glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) (Du *et al.*, 2000) by modifying the enzyme with polymers of ADP-ribose (Brownlee, 2005), resulting in increased levels of the upstream metabolites such as advanced glycation end products (AGE) and protein kinase-C (PKC). The inhibition of GADPH, as well as the overproduction of superoxides, activate four major pathways of hyperglycaemic damage: The polyol pathway (Allen *et al.*, 2005), non-

enzymatic protein glycation, PKC activation (Rolo & Palmeira, 2006), and the hexosamine pathway (Du *et al.,* 2000; Brownlee, 2001).

Hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress, as well as the pathways of hyperglycaemic damage will be discussed in greater detail below.

3.1 Polyol pathway

As indicated in **Figure 2**, high amounts of glucose inside the cell are reduced to sorbitol by aldose reductase in a process that consumes nicotinamide adenine dinucletide phosphate (NADPH). Since the affinity of aldose reductase for glucose is low, maximal rates of aldose reductase-catalyzed formation of sorbitol can be attained only with high intracellular concentrations of glucose, such as in the early stages of type 2 diabetes (Kawanishi *et al.,* 2003). The conversion of sorbitol to fructose impairs the NADPH-dependent generation of reduced glutathione (GSH), an intracellular antioxidant (Allen *et al.,* 2005), which in turn may lead to hyperglycaemia-induced cell apoptosis and oxidative stress.

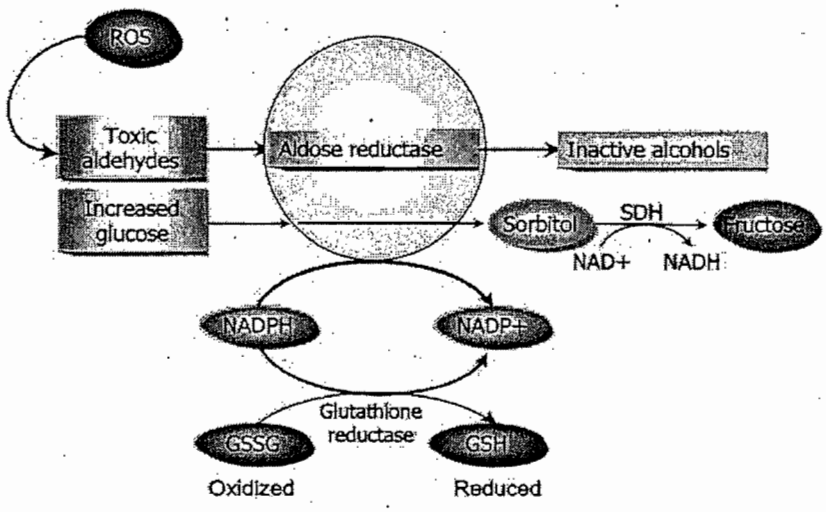


Figure 2

Schematic presentation of the polyol pathway (Brownlee, 2005).

Some of the high glucose inside the cell is reduced to sorbitol by aldose reductase in a process that consumes NADPH. The conversion of sorbitol to fructose impairs the NADPH-dependent generation of reduced GSH leading to hyperglycaemia-induced cell apoptosis and oxidative stress.

3.2 Advanced glycation end products (AGEs) pathway

Non-enzymatic glycation occurs through the covalent binding of aldehyde or ketone groups of reducing sugars to free amino groups of proteins to form labile Schiff's base (Singh *et al.,* 2001, Basta *et al.,* 2004). The initial Schiff's base undergoes rearrangement to form Amadori's products, which is responsible for some of the biological consequences in glycation (Basta *et al.,* 2004). Additionally, Amadori's products can be degraded into a variety of highly active carbonyl groups, such as 3-deoxy-glucosone, which can react again with free amino groups to form intermediate glycation products (Basta *et al.,* 2004). These intermediate glycation products (including 3-deoxy-glucosone, glyoxal, and methyl-glyoxal) sporadically undergo a series of chemical rearrangements to yield irreversible advanced glycation end products

(AGEs). Glyoxal and methyl-glyoxal products can also be formed by glucose auto-oxidation or produced from glycolipids (Thornalley *et al.,* 1999) **(Figure 3)**. This process is also known as the Maillard reaction (Singh *et al.,* 2001). Glycation is concentration-dependent in the early stages of the Maillard reaction (Furth, 1997) and is thus enhanced in diabetic patients. AGEs accumulate in most sites of diabetes complications including the kidney, retina and atherosclerotic plaques (Makita *et al.,* 1994; Bucala & Vlassara, 1995; Hammes *et al.,* 1999). The formation of AGEs is, however, catalyzed by transition metals and can duly be inhibited by reducing compounds such as antioxidants (Chappey *et al.,* 1997). Tissue AGE concentration correlates to the degree of atherosclerotic lesions (Basta *et al.,* 2004) by the following mechanisms:

1) Mechanical cross-bridge dysfunction among the vessel wall macromolecules (Sell and Monnier, 1989).
2) Circulating blood cells adhering to the blood vessel walls (Basta *et al.,* 2004),
3) Perturbation of cellular function through binding to a variety of receptors on macrophages, endothelial cells, smooth muscle cells, renal cells, and neuronal cells (Hori *et al.,* 1995; Yan *et al.,* 1996).

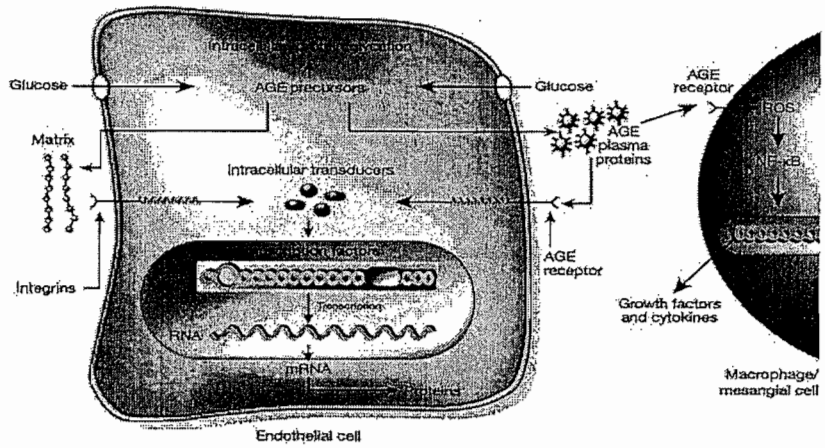


Figure 3

Increased production of AGE precursors and its pathologic consequences (Brownlee, 2001).

Reducing sugars such as glucose, react non-enzymatically with amino groups in proteins, lipids and nucleic acids through a series of reactions to form AGEs. This causes cell damage via the modification of proteins, the modification of extracellular matrix molecules by AGE precursors, and the modification of circulating proteins by AGE precursors.

3.3 Protein kinase C (PKC) pathway

In diabetes, the activity of sorbitol dehydrogenase is increased, resulting in an increased reduction of fructose to sorbitol (polyol pathway). This reduction of fructose to sorbitol causes an increase in the nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide(reduced)/nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide(oxidised) ($NADH/NAD^+$) ratio resulting in the increase synthesis of diacylglycerol. Increased diacylglycerol serves as a PKC activator (Rolo & Palmeira, 2006) (**Figure 4**). PKC activation has many biochemical consequences that relate to diabetes complications including the following: increased tumour growth factor (TGF)-β, increased vascular endothelial growth factor, increased

endothelin-1, increased NAD(P)H oxidase, increased nuclear factor (NF)-kB and increased ROS production (Inoguchi *et al.*, 1991; Ishii *et al.*, 1996; Brownlee, 2001). The activation of the PKC pathway may result in the development of microvascular complications of diabetes such as retinopathy and nephropathy (Brownlee, 2005).

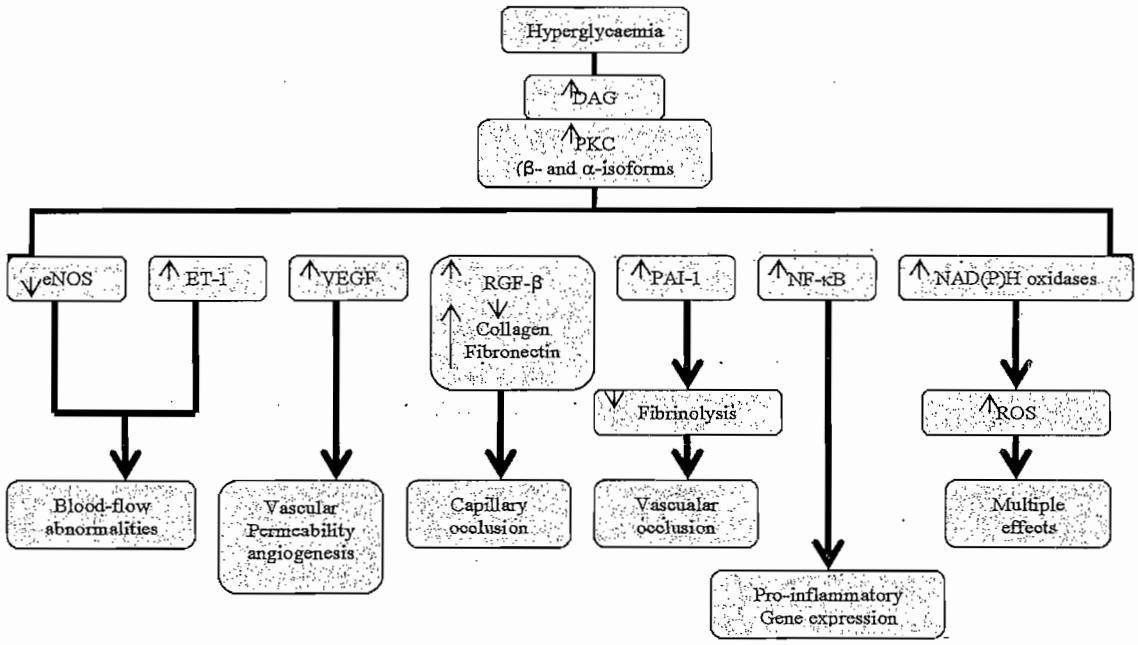


Figure 4

Hyperglyceamia-induced PKC activation (Brownlee, 2005)

Inside the cell hyperglycaemia indirectly acts as an activating co-factor for PKC isoforms β, δ, and α. This affects gene expression and results in increased endothelin-1 (ET-1), increased vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), increased tumour growth factor (TGF)-β, increased plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1), increased nucleic factor (NF)-kB and increased NAD(P)H oxidase and ROS production and consequently blood-flow abnormalities, compromised vascular permeability, capillary and vascular occlusion, pro-inflammatory gene expression, and oxidative stress.

3.4 Hexosamine pathway

The hexosamine pathway (**Figure 5**), is an additional pathway of glucose metabolism that may mediate some of the toxic effects of high blood glucose (Du *et al.,* 2000; Brownlee, 2001). Under usual metabolic conditions, 2-5% of the glucose entering the cells is directed to the hexosamine pathway and is metabolised through glycolysis, resulting in the conversion of fructose-6-phosphate to glucosamine 6-phosphate (Brownlee, 2001; James *et al.,* 2002). However, during hyperglycaemia much of the excess glucose is shunted into the hexosamine pathway, resulting in the overproduction of uridine diphosphate (UDP)-*N*-acetylglucosamine, the substrate for the glycosylation of important intracellular factors such as growth factor-β1 and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1). Both of these are deleterious to blood vessels (McClain and Crook, 1996; Du *et al.,* 2000). PAI-1 is the primary physiological inhibitor of plasminogen activation *in vivo* (Loskutoff & Samat, 1998). PAI-1 also regulates fibrinolysis (Alessi & Juhan-Vague, 2006). Elevations in plasma PAI-1 levels result in abnormal fibrin clearance mechanisms and the formation of atherosclerotic plagues (Loskutoff & Samat, 1998; Alessi & Juhan-Vague, 2006). Clinical evidence suggests that increased PAI- levels are associated with atherothrombosis (Kohler & Grant, 2000; Sobel *et al.,* 2003) and it is also a predictor for myocardial infarction (Hamsten *et al.,* 1987; Juhan-Vague *et al.,* 1996; Smith *et al.,* 2005). This over production is linked to insulin resistance (Robertson, 2001) and leads to the development of diabetic micro-vascular complications (Gabriely *et al.,* 2002; Goldberg *et al.,* 2002).

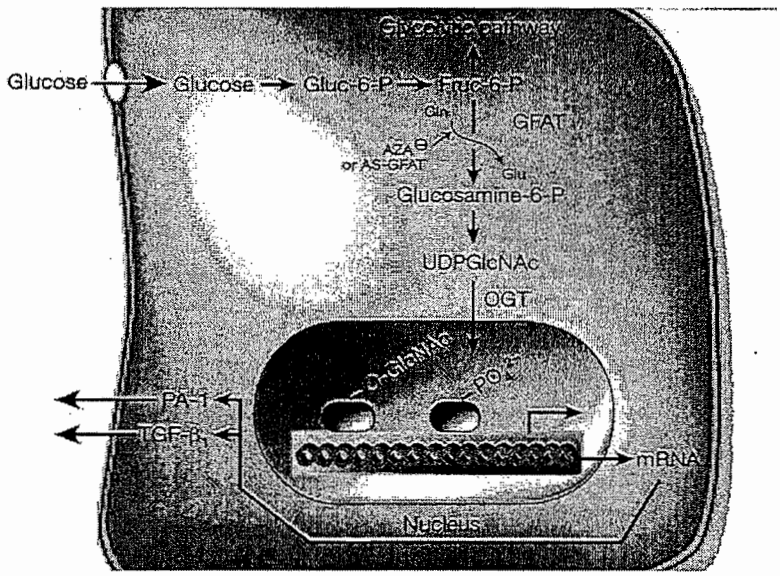


Figure 5

Hexosamine pathway (Brownlee, 2001).

During hyperglycaemia in early stages of type 2 daiebets, excess glucose is shunted into the hexosamine pathway resulting in the overproduction of uridine diphosphate (UDP)-N-acetylglucosamine, leading to glycosylation of growth factor-β1 (TGF-β1) and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1). This ultimately leads to altered fibrinolysis, insulin resistance, cardiovascular events, and micro vascular complications.

High postprandial glucose through the activation of the polyol pathway, the hexosamine pathway, the PKC pathway and the AGE pathway, in turn results in a number of diabetic complications. These will broadly be discussed in sections 4 and 5.

4. HYPERGLYCAEMIA INDUCED LIPID PROFILE ABNORMALITIES

Altered insulin secretion induced by mechanisms explained above, in turn, results in dyslipidaemia characterized by increased levels of total cholesterol (TC), low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C), very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (VLDL-C) and triglycerides (TG) and decreased levels of high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) (Krauss, 2004). Abnormalities in lipid profiles are one of the most common complications in diabetes. Hyperglycaemia and insulin resistance both play a pivotal role in the metabolism of TG-rich lipoproteins, which ultimately leads to diabetic dyslipidaemia **(Figure 6)**. Krauss summarizes this as follows: Firstly, increased hepatic secretion and impaired clearance of very low-density lipoproteins (VLDL) results in prolonged plasma retention of this as partially lipolyzed remnants, or cholesterol-enriched intermediate-density lipoproteins (IDL). Secondly, it also results in increased production of small, dense LDL particles, which are inversely related to plasma HDL particles. The production of small, dense LDL particles arises from the TG enrichment of the lipolytic products through the action of cholesteryl ester transfer protein as well as the hydrolysis of TG and phospholipids by hepatic lipase. A major factor involved in the reduction in HDL particles associated with diabetes, appears to be the increased transfer of cholesterol from HDL particles to TG-rich lipoproteins, with the mutual transfer of TG to HDL. TG-rich HDL particles are hydrolyzed by hepatic lipase and are rapidly catabolized and cleared from the plasma, resulting in low levels of plasma HDL (Krauss, 2004). Apart from the over production of VLDL by the liver due to hyperglycaemia, insulin resistance also increases the action of hormone sensitive lipase, thereby increasing lipolysis in adipose tissue, which ultimately results in increased free fatty acids (FFA) which are then transported to the liver (Izkhakov *et al.*, 2003), and once again contributing to VLDL overproduction. Additionally, FFA in the form of TG is deposited in

the muscle, liver, heart, and pancreas, resulting in decreased insulin sensitivity in this tissue (Krauss, 2004). Furthermore, insulin resistance also increases hepatic lipase activity (Watson *et al.,* 1994; Tan *et al.,* 1995).

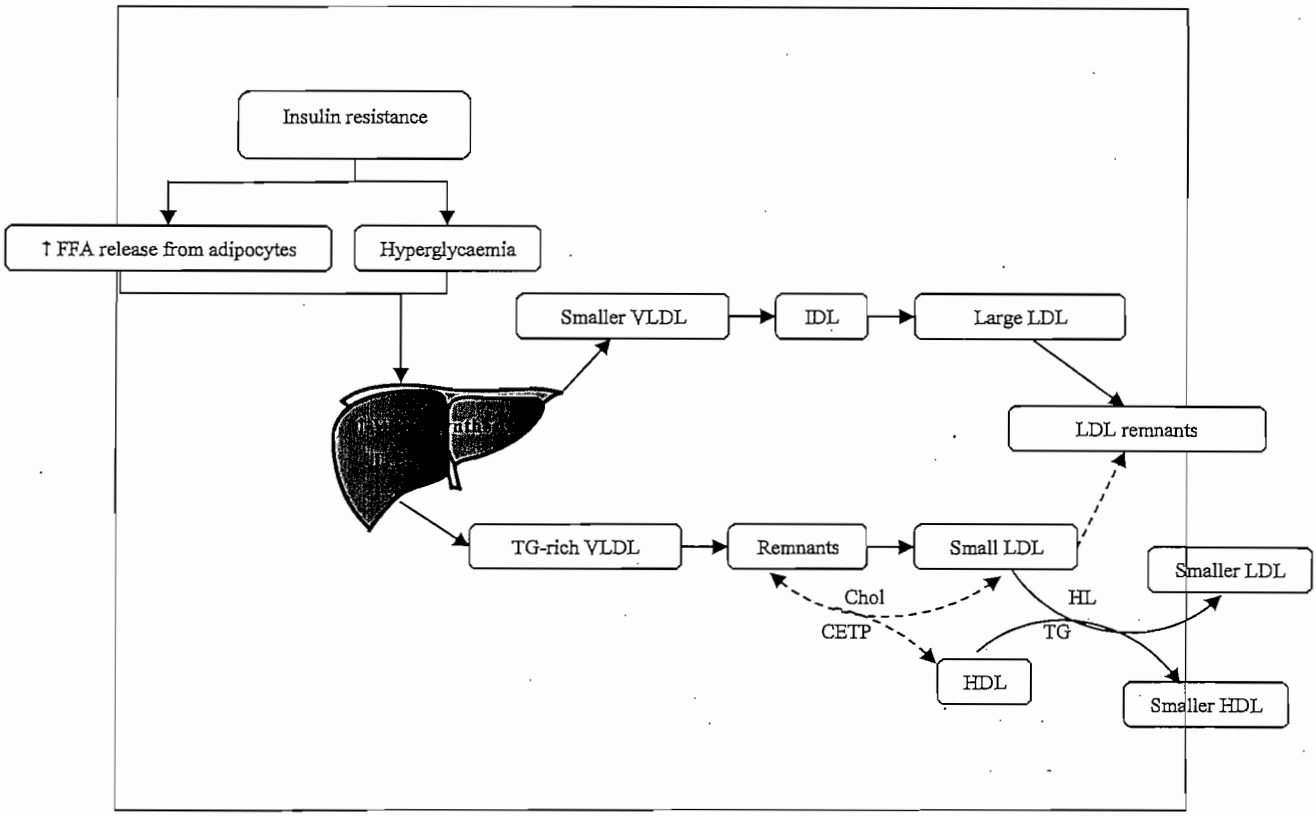


Figure 6 (Krauss, 2004)

Altered lipid metabolism in diabetes

Insulin resistance and accompanied increased free fatty acids (FFA) and hyperglycaemia cause the production of increased small, dense low-density lipoprotein (LDL) particles and decreased high-density lipoprotein (HDL) particles. Hyperglycaemia-induced very low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) production ultimately leads to the increased deposition of FFA (in the form of triglycerides (TG)) in the liver, muscle and heart and pancreas resulting in reduced insulin sensitivity in this tissue.

5. MACRO AND MICRO VASCULAR DIABETIC COMPLICATIONS

In the light of this study and the mechanisms described above, the focus will be on the link between abnormalities in lipid metabolism and oxidative stress and their role in the development of micro and macro vascular complications. Due to the fact that the diabetes associated micro and macro vascular complications are not the focus of this thesis, these complications will only briefly be discussed in the light of the underlying mechanisms associated with hyperglycaemia, dyslipidaemia and oxidative stress.

Hyperglycaemia, more specifically hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress, has been recognized as an independent risk factor for the development of both micro-vascular and macro-vascular complications (Giugliano *et al.,* 1996; Capes *et al.,* 2000; King & Loeken, 2004). At a cellular level, much is known about the deleterious effects of high glucose concentrations (Allen *et al.,* 2005) with hyperglycaemia being widely recognized as the causal link between diabetes and diabetic complications (reviewed by Brownlee, 2003). The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) and the United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) established that hyperglycaemia is the initiating cause of diabetic tissue damage. Additionally, scientific evidence confirms the association between diabetes related complications and oxidative stress (Baynes, 1991). The most likely explanation for hyperglycaemia-induced micro-vascular and macro-vascular complications during diabetes seems to entail the combined effects of increased levels of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and decreased capacity of the cellular antioxidant defence systems (Chung *et al.,* 2003). Constant changes in the redox status of enzymes and transcription factors as well as changes in NAD^+ cofactor ratios are important in normal cellular physiology (King & Loeken, 2004). However, normal cell physiology can adversely be affected by chronic or excess oxidant production (King & Loeken, 2004). For

example, while PKC and nitric oxide synthase (NOS) are necessary for normal cellular function, an overproduction may disrupt the normal function of affected tissue (King & Loeken, 2004). Similarly, the normal promotion of cell cycle progression in response to growth factors with the production of H_2O_2 may be overturned by excessive H_2O_2 production, resulting in cell cycle arrest (Savitsky & Finkel, 2002). Diabetic micro-vascular and macro-vascular complications may, therefore, transpire due to hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress through various pathways that may interfere with the normal function of affected tissue in the following ways: by increasing blood flow and disturbing hemodynamics in the retina (Kunisaki *et al.,* 1995; Kowluru & Kennedy, 2001); by affecting the contractility of vascular smooth muscle cells (Sharpe *et al.,* 1998), by damaging the mesangial cells in the renal glomerulus (Brownlee, 2005) and decreasing neural conductivity in peripheral nerves (Hounsom *et al.,* 2001). Baynes and Thorpe (1999) suggested that the various pathways of hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress production overlap and intersect with one another, for example, AGE formation and polyol pathway activity may lead to oxidative stress. The increased AGE formation may additionally lead to the activation of the PKC pathway as well as increased growth factor expression, which, once again, leads to increased oxidative stress. Furthermore, this increase in oxidative stress may not be sufficient to induce total tissue destruction, however, it may cause enough damage to cause DNA strand breaks, thereby inducing cell death (Du *et al.,* 2003) and consequently impair the integrity and function of the entire tissue. Apart from affecting the static function of the signalling pathways, hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress may also affect gene expression involved in cell survival or death, as well as cell function, ultimately causing compromised tissue function (King & Loeken, 2004).

In addition to oxidative stress, lipid concentrations are also strongly related to the development of micro and macro vascular complications (Jenkins *et al.,* 2003; Lyons *et al.,* 2004; Tesfaye *et al.,* 2005; Petitti *et al.,* 2007).

Lipoprotein abnormalities, such as glycation and oxidation, are both important factors in the development of diabetic complications (Lyons *et al.,* 1987). However, less known factors such as altered distribution in lipoprotein sub-classes may also play a significant role in the development of diabetic complications (Austin *et al.,* 1988; Havel, 1990; Fievet & Fruchart, 1991). Lipoproteins may, furthermore, exert their adverse effects through altered coagulation, fibrinolysis, vascular tone, or insulin resistance (Jenkins *et al.,* 2003).

5.1. Micro vascular complications

5.1.1. Retinopathy:

Retinopathy is the most common complication of diabetes mellitus, affecting up to 90% of the diabetic population with loss of vision seen in about 5% patients diagnosed with diabetes (Yülek *et al.,* 2007). Patients with poor, long-term glycaemic control, are more vulnerable to diabetic retinopathy than to other micro vascular complications of diabetes (Yülek *et al.,* 2007). In addition to poor glycaemic control, the literature has confirmed the involvement of oxidative stress early in the course of the development of diabetic retinopathy (Kowluru, 2003). Unfortunately, these effects are not easily reversed, or the progression thereof slowed by the reinstitution of good glycaemic control (Kowluru, 2003).

5.1.2. Nephropathy:

Diabetic nephropathy is characterized by glomerular basement thickening, glomerular and tubular hypertrophy, mesangial expansion, glomerulosclerosis and tubulointerstitial fibrosis (Jacobsen, 2005), hypertension, a progressive increase in albuminuria, a high cardiovascular risk and an unrelenting decline in glomerular filtration rate (GFR). This in turn may lead to end stage renal disease (ESRD) (Rossing, 2007). Patients of 10 to 15 years of age with previously diagnosed type 1 diabetes are at risk of developing diabetic

nephropathy. The interval for type 2 diabetes is less clearly defined because onset of this type of diabetes is less defined (Rossing, 2007). Without specific intervention, 20% to 40% of diabetic patients will develop nephropathy with devastating consequences (Rossing, 2007). Contrary to the progressive and irreversible development of diabetic nephropathy in the past, recent advances in the management and treatment of diabetic nephropathy has led to the substantial improvement of this complication through early and aggressive blood pressure lowering (Parving *et al.,* 2001).

5.1.3. Neuropathy:

Diabetic neuropathy can be defined as signs and symptoms of peripheral nerve dysfunction in patients with diabetes mellitus in whom other causes of peripheral nerve dysfunction have been excluded (Bansal *et al.,* 2006). Diabetic neuropathies affect both peripheral and autonomic nervous systems and cause considerable morbidity and mortality in diabetic patients (Vinik *et al.,* 2008). Although the main causes of diabetic neuropathy are still largely unknown, ischaemic and metabolic components are implicated in the pathogenesis (Bansal *et al.,* 2006). Hyperglycaemia induces rheological changes which in turn results in increased endothelial vascular resistance and reduced blood flow. Additionally, hyperglycaemia also causes the depletion of nerve myoinositol through a competitive uptake mechanism. Hyperglyceamia-induced oxidative stress, through mechanisms previously described, results in abnormal neuronal, axonal, and Schwann cell metabolism, further resulting in impaired axonal transport. Furthermore, increased vascular resistance results in hypoxia and additional nerve damage (Bansal *et al.,* 2006). The treatment of diabetic neuropathy is aimed at decreased progression by ultimately controlling blood glucose levels, as well as symptomatic relief (Bansal *et al.,* 2006).

5.2. Macro vascular complications

5.2.1. Cardiovascular disease (CVD):

CVD occurs with greater frequency in people with diabetes mellitus and the prevalence of CVD is even more prominent in diabetic women than diabetic men (Nathan, 1993; Huxley *et al.,* 2006). Epidemiological studies have constantly shown that diabetes increases the risk for coronary heart disease (CHD), (Fuller *et al.,* 2001; Almdal *et al.,* 2004; Fox *et al.,* 2004; Vaccaro *et al.,* 2004) in part due to the strong association between the lipid profile and risk of CHD in adults with diabetes (Petitti *et al.,* 2007). Wajchenberg (2007) and others suggested that CVD may be related to a poor control of hyperglycaemia. Increased LDL oxidation and endothelial dysfunction as a result of chronic hyperglycaemia directly affect most CVD risk factors (reviewed by Wajchenberg, 2007). Bloomgarden (2004) reviewed different factors that may have an effect on the development of CVD. Inflammation, as a result of hyperglycaemia, may contribute to the development of CVD through the hexosamine pathway (reviewed by Bloomgarden, 2004). Similarly, hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress results in increased nitric oxide (NO) production which ultimately leads to DNA damage (Wajchenberg, 2007). This DNA damage results in acute endothelial dysfunction contributing to the development of CVD (Wajchenberg, 2007). Furthermore, hyperglycaemia also results in the activation of the PKC pathway which has known effects on the development of diabetic complications (Brownlee, 2005).

5.2.2. Peripheral vascular disease (PVD):

PVD can be defined as lower extremity arterial atherosclerosis (Adler *et al.,* 2002) and can present as painful aching, cramping, or tightness of muscles during exercise, due to insufficient blood flow to meet the metabolic demands (Falconer *et al.,* 2008). PVD is more common in patients with diabetes and may increase the risk for lower extremity amputations (Barzilay *et al.,* 1997).

The involvement of hyperglycaemia in the development of PVD is clearly defined, even though no prospective study has previously identified hyperglycaemia as an independent risk factor in type 2 diabetes (Adler *et al.,* 2002). However, even in the absence of diabetes, insulin resistance increases the risk of PVD by nearly 50% (Muntner *et al.,* 2005). Uncontrolled hyperglycaemia as well as increased HbA1c levels result in an increased risk for the development of PVD (Bartholomew & Olin, 2006) through various pathways including the polyol pathway, the AGE pathway, the PKC pathway, and the hexosamine pathway (Giugliano *et al.,* 2008). These pathways are described in detail in section 3.

5.2.3. Cerebrovascular disease:

More than 40 years ago it was documented that cerebrovascular disease is present in twice as many diabetic patients beyond the age of 40 years, compared to non-diabetic individuals of the same age (Grunnet, 1963, Garcia *et al.,* 1974). The pathogenesis of diabetes-associated stroke appears to be linked to excessive glycation and oxidation, endothelial dysfunction, increased platelet aggregation, impaired fibrinolysis and insulin resistance (Lukovits *et al.,* 1999). As with most of the complications linked with diabetes, chronic hyperglycaemia and insulin resistance are, once again, being targeted as significant factors in the development and progression of diabetes-associated cerebrovascular disease (Ceriello *et al.,* 1992; Folsom *et al.,* 1999).

6. MANAGEMENT OF DIABETES MELLITUS AND DIABETIC COMPLICATIONS

The management of diabetes and diabetic complications are multi-factorial which can be addressed individually or in combination to manage diabetes and its associated complications (Nathan *et al.,* 2009). These factors include lifestyle interventions including weight management, correct diet, physical activity, and medical management (The Diabetes Control and Complications

Trial Research Group, 1993; Nathan *et al.*, 2009) using amongst others; hypoglycaemic agents, antioxidant therapy (Wohaieb & Godin, 1987); and poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) inhibitors (Brownlee, 2005). The main aim of these treatments being improved glucose control. These factors will be discussed in the following section.

6.1. Strict glucose control

Due to the fact that diabetes mellitus is associated with various abnormalities and complications (as previously discussed), there are different goals in the management of diabetes **(Tables 2 & 3).** The first consideration is glucose control, since all the diabetes-related complications are (directly or indirectly) caused by chronic high blood glucose levels. The American Diabetic Association (ADA) and the American College of Endocrinologists/American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists (ACE/AACE) suggest that a fasting blood glucose level of between 4.44 and 6.1 mmol/L (80 – 110 mg/dL) should be maintained, whereas HbA_{1c} levels should be kept in a range between 6.5 and 7% (Collins, 2002) **(Table 2).** As hyperglycaemia and insulin resistance lead to the development of hypertension as well as a distinctive atherogenic lipid profile, the management of hyperglycaemia as well as the atherogenic lipid profile are important parts of diabetes management **(Table 3).** Lipid management of patients with diabetes should be directed at lowering LDL-C and TG levels, as well as raising HDL-C levels in order to reduce the development of macro vascular complications (American Diabetes Association, 2002).

6.2. Lifestyle interventions

Inactivity and overweight are major lifestyle factors contributing to the development of diabetes and may also result in poor management of diabetes

and diabetic complications (Harris, 1991; American Diabetes Association, 2002). Modest weight loss of 5-10% of the total body weight translates into improved insulin sensitivity (McAuley *et al.,* 2002) and decreased cardiovascular risk factors in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus (Hollander *et al.,* 1998; Kelley *et al.,* 2002). Additionally, physical activity results in improved glycaemic control, blood pressure, and lipid levels (Wolf *et al.,* 2004). It has been shown that weight loss in type 2 diabetes improves insulin resistance, increases insulin-stimulated nonoxidative-glucose metabolism, and enhances the effect of insulin to inhibit exogenous glucose production and suppress lipid oxidation (Henry *et al.,* 1986; Kelley *et al.,* 1993; Goodpaster *et al.,* 1999; Kelley *et al.,* 1999). Recently it has been shown that a diet consisting of 30% protein, 20% carbohydrate, and 50% fat over five weeks resulted in a 38% reduction in 24-hour integrated glucose area, a reduction in fasting glucose to near normal levels and a total glycated hemoglobin (HbA_{1c}) reduction from 9.8% to 7.6% (Gannon & Nuttall, 2006). However, such diet may cause other complications over the long term due to its high fat:carbohydrate ratio. The level of HbA_{1c} provides a measure of glycaemic control of diabetes patients during the previous two to three months (Jeffcoate, 2004). However, currently the American Diabetes Association recommends a carbohydrate intake of between 45% and 65% of the daily total energy intake (Delahanty *et al.,* 2009).

Table 2

Guidelines for glycaemic control in mmol/L (mg/dL) in diabetes (American Diabetes Association, 2002)

	Fasting BG	**Pre-prandial BG**	**Post-prandial BG**	**Bedtime BG**	**HbA_{1C}** (%)
Normal range	3.88 – 5.60 (70 – 100)	< 5.60 (< 100)	< 7.80 (< 140)	< 6.10 (< 110)	< 6.0
ADA	4.44 – 6.10 (80 – 110)	4.44 – 6.70 (80 – 120)	< 10.1 (< 180)	5.60 – 7.80 (100 – 140)	< 7.0
ACE/AACE	< 6.10 (< 110)	< 6.10 (< 110)	< 7.78 (< 140)	-	< 6.5

BG: Blood glucose; HbA_{1c}: Hemoglobin A_{1c}; ADA: American Diabetes Association; ACE/AACE: American College of Endocrinologists/American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists

Table 3

Goals for blood pressure and lipid levels for adults with diabetes (American Diabetes Association, 2002)

Parameter	Goal
Blood pressure (mm Hg)	
Systolic	< 130
Diastolic	< 80
Triglycerides in mmol/L (mg/dL)	< 1.70 (< 150)
HDL-C in mmol/L (mg/dL)	
Men	> 1.17 (> 45)
Women	> 1.43 (> 55)
LDL-C in mmol/L (mg/dL)	< 5.60 (< 100)

HDL-C: High-density lipoprotein cholesterol; LDL-C: Low-density lipoprotein cholesterol

6.3. Medical management

The global mortality rate from diabetes has been largely reduced through the control of hyperglycaemia by the development of potent anti-diabetic substances (Joost, 1985), ultra pure recombinant human insulin (Heinemann *et al.,* 1990), and new methods for insulin delivery (Mirouze, 1983). This has lead to a dramatic increase in life expectancy of people diagnosed with this disease. The various medicinal strategies that are currently being used will be discussed below.

6.3.1 Oral hypoglycaemic agents:

Current recommendations from the American Diabetes Association include a trial of diet and exercise as first line therapy for the treatment of patients with type 2 diabetes. If the desired level of glycaemia control is not achieved within three months, a pharmacological intervention is required (Luna & Feinflos, 2001). Different classes of pharmacological interventions include: Sulphonylureas, Meglitinides, Biguanides, Thiazolidinediones and Alpha(α)-glucosidase inhibitors. These will be discussed in the section below.

6.3.3.1 Sulfonylureas:

Sulfonylureas stimulate insulin release from the β-cells and may slightly improve insulin resistance in peripheral target tissue (Sturgess *et al.,* 1985; Luna & Feinglos, 2001) by the closure of the ATP-dependent potassium channels in the target tissue (Gerich, 1989). This class of oral hypoglycaemic agents generally reduces $HbA1_c$ levels as well as fasting plasma glucose concentrations (Luna & Feingloss, 2001). Included in this class of treatment is tolbutamide, tolazamide, chlorpropamide, glibenclamide, glipizide and gliclazide (Luna & Feinglos, 2001).

6.3.3.2 Meglinitides:

The mechanism of action of meglinitides (repaglinide and nateglinide) closely resembles that of sulfonylureas (Luna & Feinglos, 2001). Metglinides also stimulate insulin release from the β-cells, but are mediated through a different binding site of the β-cell. Unlike sulfonylureas, metglinides have a very short onset of action and a short half-life (Luna & Feinglos, 2001).

6.3.3.3 Biguanides:

Metformin is currently the only agent in this class being used in America. It works by reducing hepatic glucose output and enhancing insulin sensitivity in hepatic and peripheral tissue (DeFronzo *et al.,* 1995; Feinglos & Bethel, 1998; DeFronzo, 1999). Metformin has been shown to reduce $HbA1_c$ levels and

fasting plasma glucose concentrations. It also reduces plasma TG and LDL levels (Luna & Feinglos, 2001).

6.3.3.4 Thiazolidinediones:

Included in this class are pioglitazone and troziglitazone. These agents work by enhancing insulin sensitivity in muscle and adipose tissue. It also reduces hepatic glucose production to a lesser extent. These drugs noticeably improve insulin resistance, especially when used in combination with other drugs (Luna & Feinglos, 2001). However, it has no effect on insulin secretion (Luna & Feinglos, 2001). Monotherapy with these agents has been associated with reduced $HbA1_c$ levels as well as reduced fasting plasma glucose concentrations (Feinglos & Bethel, 1998; DeFronzo, 1999). Additionally, troglitazone is associated with decreased TG levels (Saltiel & Olefsky, 1996; Raskin *et al.,* 2000). However, troglitazone has been removed from the market worldwide due to its negative side effects.

6.3.3.5 Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors:

Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors act by inhibiting the enzyme alpha-glucosidase which cleaves complex carbohydrates into sugars (Luna & Feinglos, 2001), thus inhibiting the absorption of sugars after a meal. The largest impact of the class is, therefore, on postprandial glycaemia (Luna & Feinglos, 2001), with a modest effect on fasting plasma glucose concentrations. Additionally, alpha-glucosidase inhibitors (acarbose and miglitol) have been associated with a reduction in $HbA1_c$ levels (Feinglos & Bethel, 1998; DeFronzo, 1999).

6.3.2 Antioxidant therapy:

Even though many authors proved that oxidative stress markers can be normalized and early signs of micro vascular and macro vascular complications can be prevented with antioxidant therapy (Koya *et al.,* 1997; Studer *et al.,* 1997; Bursell *et al.,* 1999; Cameron & Cotter, 1999; Kowrulu & Kennedy, 2001), the literature is still vague as to whether oxidative stress

appears early in diabetes, preceding the development of complications, or whether it is merely a result of tissue damage (Baynes & Thorpe, 1999; Kuroki *et al.,* 2003). Clinical and animal studies have, however, shown improvements in many parameters of oxidative stress such as in lipid peroxidation, increased isopropanes, plasma malondialdehyde and cellular markers of oxidative stress such as NF-kB (Koya *et al.,* 1997; Studer *et al.,* 1997; Bursell *et al.,* 1999; Cameron *et al.,* 1999; Beckman *et al.,* 2001; Gaede *et al.,* 2001; Kowrulu & Kennedy, 2001; Venugopal *et al.,* 2002; Kuroki *et al.,* 2003), as well as in early or functional markers of diabetic retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy and cardiovascular disease (Cameron *et al.,* 1999) using antioxidant treatments such as vitamin C and E supplementation, either individually or in combination. Additionally, it has been reported that vitamin C and E supplementation resulted in improved blood flow, nerve conduction velocity, permeability, endothelial dysfunction, albuminuria and vascular contractility (Cameron *et al.,* 1999).

6.3.3. PARP inhibitors:

Since the activation of PARP modifies and inhibits GAPDH, which in turn leads to the activation of the major pathways of hyperglycaemic damage, the inhibition thereof would block these pathways and ultimately prevent hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress. As shown by Du and co-workers in 2003, a specific PARP inhibitor prevented hyperglycaemia-induced activation of PKC, NF-κB, intracellular AGE formation, and the hexosamine pathway. In long-term experimental diabetes, treatment with a PARP inhibitor also completely prevented the major structural lesion of both human non-proliferative retinopathy and experimental diabetic retinopathy (Brownlee, 2005).

Apart from the above-mentioned medicines used in the Western world, the earliest recorded treatments for diabetes also involved the use of various plants. As early as 1550 BC high-fibre diets consisting of wheat grains and

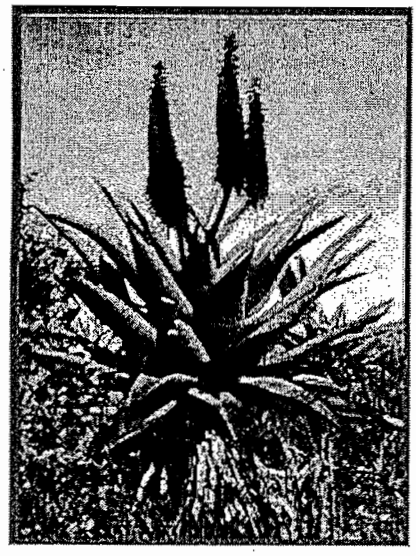
ochre (a pigment made from the iron ores haematite (red), goethite (yellow) or limonite (brown), and often used for medicinal purposes), were recommended to normalise diabetes-associated hyperglycaemia (Bailey & Day, 1989). For this reason, orally active botanicals may serve as substitutes for oral hypoglycaemic agents. However, even though botanical therapies still remain the cornerstone of diabetes medicine in underdeveloped regions, the availability and advancement of insulin therapy resulted in the progressive disappearance of indigenous botanical treatments in Western societies (Bailey & Day, 1989). Due to renewed global attention to alternative medicine and natural therapies, renewed scientific interest in this field has evolved.

Many people in South Africa as well as the populations of developing countries still use plants for medicinal purposes (Cunningham, 1993; Thring & Weitz, 2005). Over 27 million people in South Africa use indigenous medicine and up to 60% of the population consult with one of 200 000 indigenous traditional healers (Reviewed by Thring & Weitz, 2005). Despite their extensive use, only few traditional plants have a scientific basis for their proposed actions (WHO 1999). However, through advances in human nutrition research, scientists have an increasing understanding of the relationship between the chemical composition of plants and the health status of those consuming them. In the next section, *Aloes* will be discussed as an indigenous plant widely used for the treatment of diabetes in South Africa.

7. ALOE

Aloes have been used therapeutically since ancient times (Morton, 1961, Crosswhite & Crosswhite, 1984) and popularity in the inner, colourless leaf gel has increased in the last two decades (Reynolds & Dweck, 1999). *Aloe* gel has been sold commercially in various parts of the world as part of a wide range of health care, cosmetic and therapeutic product ranges (Reynolds & Dweck, 1999). Apart from their extensive commercial use, various *Aloe*

species are also being used in rural communities throughout the globe to treat a variety of ailments. In South Africa for instance, the leaves of various *Aloe* species are used for their laxative, anti-inflammatory, immuno-stimulant, anticeptic (reviewed by Okyar *et al.,* 2001), wound and burn healing (Chithra *et al.,* 1998), anti-ulcer (Koo, 1994), and anti-tumor (Saito, 1993) activities, of which their anti-diabetic activity is the most common application (Bunyapraphatsara *et al.,* 1996; personal communications with traditional healers). In this study the focus is on the two *Aloe* species most widely distributed over South Africa. *Aloe ferox* is a tall single stemmed plant distributed over more than a thousand kilometres from the South Western Cape through to Southern Kwazulu-Natal, the south eastern corner of the Free State and Southern Lesotho, South Africa (Aubry, 2001). It prefers a cooler climate and creates a stunning winter display when in bloom. However, due to the large difference in the climate in the different parts of South Africa, these plants may differ physically from region to region (Aubry, 2001). *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* on the other hand, occurs in all the northern provinces of South Africa (van Wyk & Smith, 1996). Both species occur in a broad range of habitats as a result of their wide distribution range and grow both in the open and in bushy areas **(Figure 7)**.



Aloe ferox

Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana

Figure 7

Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii var. davyana

Very little scientific data regarding the compounds occurring in these species, as well as their biological activities, exist. However, recent studies have investigated the mechanisms by which *Aloe* may improve diabetes and related complications (reviewed by Loots, 2008:459). Due to the fact that *A. vera* (*Aloe barbadensis)* and *Aloe arborescens* are the most extensively described in literature (Reynolds & Dweck, 1999), the use of *Aloes* in general for the treatment of diabetes is primarily based on research done on the two *Aloe* species indigenous to the Sudan and Middle East (Agarwal, 1985). Other *Aloe* species described for their possible antidiabetic activity include *Aloe glibberellin*, *A. ferox* Mill, *Aloe perryi* Baker, and *Aloe africana* (Reynolds & Dweck, 2009). As different *Aloe* species occur in a wide range of habitats worldwide, the use of specific *Aloe* species by rural communities will depend on the immediate availability of the *Aloe* species. Additionally, inter-species variation as well as variations in climate, soil etc, are all factors which may affect the phytochemical composition of these plants, and subsequently their biological activity. As a result, a direct correlation of biological activity from

A. vera, based on phytochemical content, to other *Aloe* species occurring in other parts of the world would be inaccurate. Hence, it is important for both commercial sectors and rural communities to better describe their local *Aloe* species' phytochemical contents and biological functions, and in so doing evaluate their applications to health and disease.

8. ANTIDIABETIC EFFECTS OF ALOE

8.1. Antioxidant properties

There is increasing interest in the antioxidant activities of various phytochemicals present in the diet. Antioxidants are believed to play a very important role in the body's defence system against ROS (Ou *et al.*, 2002). It has been suggested that antioxidant action may be an important property of plant medicines associated with diabetes (Larson, 1988). Antioxidant polyphenols were recently isolated from *A. vera* and identified as aloersin derivatives (Lee *et al.*, 2000; Yagi *et al.*, 2002). After determining the antioxidant activity of crude and processed *A. barbadensis*, Lee and co-workers (2000) concluded that the extracts of the crude preparation exhibited appreciable antioxidant activity. Additionally, *A. barbadensis* has been shown to have hepatoprotective effects and this has mainly been attributed to its antioxidant capacity (Chandan *et al.*, 2007).

Although there is very limited research confirming the antioxidant capacities of various *Aloe* extracts *in vitro*, a large amount of literature exists describing the *in vivo* antioxidant effects of various *Aloe* species. Beppu and co-workers describe the protective effects of *A. arborescens* boiled leaf skin against pancreatic β-cell oxidative damage caused by methyl (CH_3^-) radicals (Beppu *et al.*, 2003, Beppu *et al.*, 2006). Additionally, *A. vera* leaf pulp (500 mg/kg) and leaf gel (63 mg/kg) extracts resulted in increased liver GSH, and a reduction in non-enzymatic glycation and lipid peroxidation in streptozotocin

(STZ)-diabetic rats (Can *et al.*, 2004). Rajasekaran and co-workers (2005a & 2005b) also showed increased liver and kidney GSH levels and increased activities of the liver and kidney antioxidant enzymes superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase (CAT), glutathione peroxidase (GPx) and glutathione-s-transferase (GST) with the administration of an *A. vera* leaf gel extract (300 mg/kg) to STZ-diabetic rats. These effects were largely attributed to the antioxidant polyphenols present in these *Aloe* species.

Apart from their antioxidant capacity, polyphenols may additionally result in decreased intestinal glucose absorption (Cao *et al.,* 1997) which in turn may lead to reduced oxidative stress. Furthermore, the lowering of blood glucose levels by *Aloe* supplementation can, additionally be expected to ultimately reduce polyol, PKC, and hexoasmine pathway activities, as well AGE production (Loots, 2008:459), further protecting tissue from hyperglycaemia-induced damage. Possible interventions to decrease diabetes induced oxidative stress, may therefore include improved glycaemic control in addition to antioxidant therapy (Sharma *et al.,* 2000) and hence may very well include plants/plant extracts that have both hypoglycaemic and anti-oxidative properties.

8.2. Glucose lowering effects

The management of diabetes without any side effects is a challenge to the medical systems, thus increasing the demand for natural products with anti-diabetic activity (Can *et al.,* 2004). As reviewed by Loots, (2008), the glucose lowering effects of *Aloe* in human and animal studies have been demonstrated by various authors (Reynolds & Dweck, 1999; Volger & Ernst, 1999). Different *Aloe* extracts (gel, juice, dried exudates, polysaccharide fractions, bitter crystals, leaf skin pulps, and acetone precipitates) of various *Aloe* species in both humans as well as Alloxan (ALX) and STZ-induced diabetic animals, have been used to investigate its possible glucose lowering effects

(Loots, 2008:459). The reported hypoglycaemic effects have mainly been attributed to two glycans (isolated from *A. aborescence*) (Hiniko *et al.,* 1986), acemannan (carbohydrate fraction of the *Aloe* gel), glycoproteins and various polysaccharides (as identified in *A. barbadensis* Miller (*A. vera* Linne) and *Kidachi Aloe*) and various phenols (Beppu *et al.,* 2006).

One of the first reports on the positive effects of *A. vera* appeared in 1985 when Agarwal investigated the lipid and glucose lowering effects of a diet containing "Husk of Isabgol" and *A. vera*, in the absence of anti-diabetic drugs, in patients with diabetes and atheromatous heart disease over a period of five years (Agarwal, 1985). He reported a marked decrease in blood sugar, serum TC and TG levels in 3167 patients who followed the diet consisting of *A. vera* leaves (Agarwal, 1985) and speculated that these positive effects may have been due to the high soluble fibre content of *A. vera* (Agarwal, 1985). Since then, various authors investigated the glucose lowering effects of different *Aloe* species (Ghannam *et al.,* 1986; Ajabnoor, 1990; Beppu *et al.,* 1993; Rajasekaran *et al.,* 2004, Gundidza *et al.,* 2005; Beppu *et al.,* 2006; Rajasekaran *et al.,* 2006; Kim *et al.,* 2009). In 1990, the acute glucose lowering effects of the exudates of *A. barbadensis* (500 mg/kg body weight) was reported after oral supplementation over four days in ALX-induced diabetic mice (Ajabnoor, 1990). The proposed positive effects were attributed to the stimulation of insulin release from the β-cells, resulting in reduced glucose levels. Abuelgasim reported slight, but not significant reductions in glucose levels with acute *A. vera* supplementation (gastric dosing of 100 and 500 mg/kg ethanol *A. vera* extract) over a six day period in 18 hour fasted normal rats after the intraperitoneal administration of 50% glucose at a dose of 2 mg/kg body weight (Abuelgasim *et al.,* 2008).

The glucose lowering effects following a longer duration of *Aloe* supplementation have also been investigated. Beppu and co-workers (1993) confirmed the blood glucose lowering effects of *Aloe* in 1993 by the oral

administration of *Kidachi Aloe* leaf pulp (*A. arborescens* var. *natalensis*) in STZ-induced diabetic rats. In 2006, Beppu and co-workers investigated the anti-diabetic effects of dietary supplements of whole leaf, leaf pulp and dried powder of *Kidachi Aloe* and *A. vera* in low dose STZ treated diabetic mice with less decisive results. Significant reductions in fasting blood glucose levels were seen after 19 days of STZ treatment with oral administration of *Kidachi Aloe* whole leaf (245 ± 69.8 mg/dL) as well as with leaf pulp administration (216 ± 42.1 mg/dL) compared to the basal diet control group (258 ± 67.5 mg/dL). However, 73 days after STZ injection, *Kidachi Aloe* and *A. vera* leaf pulp showed no anti-diabetic effects. Additionally, the *A. vera* leaf pulp showed rather high fasting blood glucose levels (269 ± 94.9 mg/dL) after 19 days, but not after 73 days (334 ± 75.7 mg/dL) following the STZ injections, compared to STZ-induced diabetic rats receiving the basal diet (258 ± 67.5 mg/dL and 374 ± mg/dL respectively) (Beppu *et al.,* 2006). Similar confounding results on blood glucose were also seen by other groups. Okyar showed similar hyperglycaemic effects using *A. vera* leaf gel (as opposed to of leaf pulp) in type 2 diabetic rats (Okyar *et al.,* 2001). These findings are supported by previous experiments showing an elevation of blood glucose levels in alloxan-diabetic mice treated with a health product containing *A. vera* leaf gel (Koo, 1994). Okyar concluded that the hyperglycaemic agent of *A. vera* probably resides in the leaf gel, and that leaf pulp, devoid of the gel, may be useful in the treatment of diabetes mellitus (Okyar *et al.,* 2001). However, Beppu and co-workers speculated that the lack in glucose lowering effects seen in the two leaf pulps may be due to the high polysaccharide and disaccharide content of these, putting extra strain on the pancreatic β-cells during the digestion and absorption of these sugars. Considering previous results showing glucose lowering effects with the intraperitoneal administration of *Kidachi Aloe* leaf (inclusive of the pulp) (Beppu *et al.,* 1993), Beppu and co-workers (2006) speculated that the method of dosing may be an important consideration when using these *Aloes* for their anti-diabetic action.

8.3. Lipid lowering effects

The lipid lowering effects of *A. vera* reported by Agarwal in 1985 was repeated in 1996 and 2006 (Bunyanpraphatsara *et al.,* 1996; Yongchaiyudha *et al.,* 1996; Rajasekaran *et al.,* 2006). Bunyanpraphatsara and co-workers (1996) as well as Yongchaiyudha and co-workers (1996) reported reduced serum TG levels in 2 human parallel studies with the supplementation of a tablespoon of *A. vera* gel over a period of 42 days. In the same way, Rajasekaran and co-workers (2006) showed marked reductions in plasma, liver and kidney cholesterol, TC, TG, LDL-C, VLDL-C, free fatty acids and phospholipids, as well as augmentations in HDL-C to near normal levels with oral dosing for 21 days of 300mg/kg/day *A. vera* leaf gel extract in STZ-induced diabetic rats.

Considering the literature, not only does the type of *Aloe* used influence the outcome of a diabetes intervention, but so does the part of the *Aloe* used (e.g. leaf, inner gel, pulp, skin), the way in which these parts are prepared/extracted prior to administration (e.g. ethanol extracts, lyophilization etc.), as well as the mode of administration (orally, gastric gavage, intraperitoneal administration, etc).

9. INDUCTION OF EXPERIMENTAL DIABETES IN EXPERIMENTAL ANIMALS

Diabetic animal models are increasingly being used for investigating the management of diabetes and its long term complications. These models can be divided into 2 broad catagories: 1) genetically induced spontaneous diabetes models and 2), experimentally/chemically induced non-spontaneous diabetes models (Islam & Loots, 2009). For the purpose of this thesis, the focus will be only on the chemically-induced diabetic animal models. The

review written by Islam and Loots (2009) will be used primarily as the source of information for this section due to its comprehensive discussion of the topic.

Due to the fact that very little is known about the possible toxicities of new medications, initial drug development is done using diabetic animal models, which can be induced using a variety of methods. Chemically-induced diabetic animal models are convenient and simple to use due to their lower cost, wider availability, and ease of diabetes induction (Islam & Loots, 2009). As summarized by Islam and Loots (2009), the most frequently used substances to induce diabetes are ALX and STZ (Szkudelski, 2001) via intraperitoneal or intravenous injections, even though various other methods to produce diabetes animal models are also being used. The first chemical described to induce diabetes was ALX (Goldner & Gomori, 1943), followed by STZ in 1963 (Rakieten *et al.,* 1963). Both these chemicals induce diabetes by destroying the pancreatic β-cells, mainly by inducing oxidative stress. Although both STZ and ALX can be used to induce type 1 or type 2 diabetes (depending on the dosage administered), the literature seems to favour the use of STZ due to its stability, mechanism of action and the diabetogenic dose needed.

In the 1950s, the first report of a diabetic animal model induced via partial pancreatectomy was described (Pauls & Bancroft, 1950) and was characterized by hyperglycaemia, reduced β-cell mass and associated reduced pancreatic weight, reduced insulin content, and reduced insulin response. Further development of this model involved varying the degree of pancreatectomy (Leahy *et al.,* 1988; Jonas *et al.,* 1999; Kurup & Bhonde, 2000), with and without the aid of diabetes inducing chemicals, alone or in combination, depending on the animal used and the degree of pancreatectomy (Islam & Loots, 2009). Even although most of these models developed

hyperglycaemia and insulin resistance, other characteristics typical of type 2 diabetes such as dyslipidaemia and impaired liver function were absent.

Apart from the development of diabetic animal models using adult animals, diabetes can also be induced during neonatal stages. Bonner-Weir and co-workers (1981) introduced a neonatal animal model with the intaperitoneal injection of SZT using 2-day old rats. With further refinement of this model it became clear that there are varying inter-species sensitivities to this drug. The need for different doses of STZ to induce diabetes, resulting in diabetes animal models with different diabetes characteristics, have been reported by various investigators (Hemmings & Spafford, 2000; Shinde & Goyal, 2003; Emonnot *et al.,* 2007). The use of ALX to induce diabetes in neonatal animals has, to our knowledge, only been attempted by one group of investigators (Kodama *et al.,* 1993) and resulted in chronic high postprandial blood glucose levels.

In addition to the use of a low to moderate dose of STZ or ALX, dietary modification has also been described as a possible way to induce diabetes in rats and mice (Hutton *et al.,* 1976; Luo *et al.,* 1998; Reed *et al.,* 2000; Zhang *et al.,* 2003; Srinivasan *et al.,* 2005; Islam & Choi, 2007). In particular, a high-fat diet in combination with STZ injections of various doses have been used to induce a type 2 diabetes rat or mouse model that presented with characteristics similar to that found in human type 2 diabetic patients. These include insulin resistance, significant increases in body weight, increased fasting blood glucose levels, increased serum insulin, increased free fatty acids, increased triglycerides (Lewis *et al.,* 1991; Reed *et al.,* 2000), and hyperlipidaemia (Lewis *et al.,* 1991).

Various authors have noted that intra-uterine growth retardation (IUGR) can also be used to develop a type 2 diabetes rat model (Dacou-Voutetakis *et al.,* 1975; Hales *et al.,* 1991; Simmons *et al.,* 2001; Vuguin *et al.,* 2004) and is

characterized by hyperglycaemia, impaired glucose tolerance, and insulin resistance. Mono-sodium glutamate (MSG), usually used in food preparation, has been shown to have necrotic effects when injected intraperateonially. When injected for a pre-determined number of days, MSG resulted in type 2 diabetes related characteristics such as obesity, impaired glucose tolerance, hyperinsulinaemia, increased triglyceride levels (Iwase *et al.,* 1998; Nagata *et al.,* 2006), abnormal lipid profiles, and abnormal liver function (Nagata *et al.,* 2006).

For the purpose of this review, only the mechanism of STZ action will be discussed, as this was the method that was used in this study.

9.1. Mechanism of streptozotocin (STZ) action

As mentioned earlier, STZ was first used to produce diabetes in experimental animal models in 1963 (Rakieten *et al.,* 1963). Since the initial discovery of the use of STZ for this purpose, various groups have manipulated the process to develop experimental animal models that closely resemble type 1 diabetes (Like and Rossini, 1976; Ganda *et al.,* 1976; Rossini *et al.,* 1977; Like *et al.,* 1978). However, since the first separate classification of type 1 and type 2 diabetes by the WHO in 1980, the process of inducing diabetes using STZ was modified to attempt the development of an experimental animal model that resembles type 2 diabetes (WHO, 1980).

STZ (2-deoxy-2-(3-(methyl-3-nitosoureido)-D-glucopyranose) is used to induce diabetes (Szkudelski, 2001) via destruction of the pancreatic β-cells. This is accomplished by the intraperitoneal or intravenous injection of STZ into various species of male rats and mice (Junod *et al.,* 1967; Rerup, 1970; Ozturk *et al.,* 1996; Rajasekaran *et al.,* 2006; Srinivasan & Ramarao, 2007; Jafarnejad *et al.,* 2007). Depending on the dosage used, a model more closely resembling that of type 1 diabetes, or that of type 2 diabetes can be induced

(Szkudelski, 2001). As STZ causes β-cell destruction, the diabetes model that results from higher doses of STZ may be thought to be closer to a type I diabetic state. However, at lower STZ dosages, only partial destruction of β-cells occurs, hence resulting in a diabetes animal model with enough insulin producing β-cells remaining for this model to be classified as non-insulin dependent responding to conventional type II diabetes medication. Judging from the literature, a dose of 50 mg/kg is generally used for inducing a type 2 state, and doses of greater than 65 mg/kg for a type 1 diabetic state (Abdel-Zaher *et al.,* 2005; Guerrero-Analco *et al.,* 2007). Most, if not all the literature uses the lower dose STZ model for investigating the anti-diabetic effects of various plant extracts, and additionally use glibenclamide (an oral hypoglycemic sulfonylurea commercially used in type 2 diabetes to control blood glucose levels) as a positive control. Apart from the intended induction of type 2 diabetes with a single intraperitoneal injection of STZ in mature rats, multiple low dose injections are also used in either infant or mature mice or rats to induce a type 2 diabetic state (Szkudelski, 2001).

An important consideration when determining the dose of STZ to induce diabetes, is the age and species of animals selected. As early as the 1970s the literature reported an age-depended effect of STZ in rats or mice (Masiello *et al.,* 1979; Riley *et al.,* 1981; Reddy & Sandler, 1995; Ranhotrs & Sharma, 2000), concluding that older animals were less sensitive to the effects of STZ than their younger counterparts. The weight of the animal was deemed less important as the dosage of STZ is calculated per kg body weight. Mice are also more tolerant to the toxic effects of STZ as compared to rats, hence lower doses are used in the latter to induce a similar diabetic state.

The diabetogenic effects of STZ can be observed within 2 hours after injection with a rise in blood glucose levels accompanied by a drop in insulin. After 6 hours, hypoglycaemia and hyperinsulinaemia occurs followed by a final rise in glucose levels accompanied by reduced insulin (West *et al.,* 1996). STZ

impairs glucose oxidation and decreases insulin biosynthesis and secretion through various processes: STZ causes oxidative stress by inhibiting the TCA cycle (Turk *et al.,* 1993) which limits mitochondrial oxygen consumption (Bedoya *et al.,* 1996). This results in the overproduction of ROS in the mitochondria. Furthermore, the STZ action in the mitochondria limits mitochondrial ATP production causing ATP depletion (Szkudelski, 2001). The restriction of ATP generation is further augmented by NO production (Szkudelski, 2001) as well as the depletion of NAD^+ by the activation of poly ADP-ribosylation (Sandler & Swenne, 1983). Low ATP levels which ultimately result in β-cell destruction is therefore responsible for reduced insulin secretion. These processes finally result in β-cell DNA damage and ultimately β-cell death (Elsner *et al.,* 2000; Szkudelski, 2001).

10. CONCLUSION

As previously mentioned, diabetes is characterized by hyperglycaemia, due to reduced insulin secretion and/or insulin resistance. Pathological processes involved in β-cell destruction (and ultimately hyperglycaemia) include auto-immune destruction of β-cells, insulin resistance, genetic β-cells defects, genetic defects in insulin secretion, diseases of the exocrine pancreas, endocrinopathies, and infections. Chronic hyperglycaemia, as in diabetes, leads to a variety of complications via various pathways. From the literature it is clear that oxidative stress typically accompanies the development of diabetes and its complications. Most notably, hyperglycaemia is one of the leading causes of oxidative stress. The mechanisms inducing this state includes glucose auto-oxidation, the non-enzymatic and progressive glycation of proteins and consequently an increase in the formation of glucose derived AGEs, enhanced glucose flux through the polyol pathway and PKC activation. Due to the unrelenting rise in the prevalence of diabetes worldwide, limiting the development of this disease and its deleterious complications is of great

importance to global health and economy. It is, therefore, not only important to treat the disease effectively, but more importantly to prevent its occurrence.

One of the most common complications associated with diabetes is an abnormal lipid profile, predominantly caused by oxidative stress, altered insulin release and insulin resistance. This dyslipidaemia is characterized by a increased TG, TC, LDL-C, VLDL-C and FFA levels and decreased HDL-C levels. These complications in turn result in the micro vascular and macro vascular complications seen in diabetic patients.

Even though type 2 diabetes is reversible if treated in its early stages, type 1 diabetes and advanced type 2 diabetes currently result in enormous psychological and economical strain to not only diseased individuals and their immediate dependents due to the lifestyle changes and medical expenses accompanying the management of this disease, but also to global health care systems. For this reason, extensive research is still being done on the discovery of inexpensive, more effective treatments for the management of this disease. In modern medicine, while effective treatment is available to manage diabetes mellitus, the drugs are often very expensive or have undesirable side effects. Personal communications with traditional healers in the North-West Province of South Africa, in addition to the information gained from ample scientific literature generated worldwide, suggest the potential use of indigenous botanicals to treat diabetes. For this reason, global science is aiming at providing scientific evidence to support the medicinal use of plants in underdeveloped regions, as well as to identify new plants with biochemically active components to treat diabetes and other ailments.

Currently, many different botanicals are being investigated for their possible anti-diabetic effects and mechanisms of action. Literature has shown various *Aloe* species to be valuable in the management of diabetes. There are 130 species of *Aloe* naturally occurring in South Africa, of which *A. greatheadii*

var *davyana* and *A. ferox* are the most common. Despite their extensive use for treating diabetes traditionally, very little, if any research has been done on the phytochemical composition and health applications of these two indigenous *Aloe* species. Hence, it would be of great value to both the commercial sectors and rural communities to define the phytochemical compositions of *Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii*, and to confirm their possible biological action and potential antidiabetic health benefits, using an STZ induced diabetic rat model.

11. LITERATURE CITED

ABDEL-ZAHER A.O., SALIM S.Y., ASSAF M.H., ABDEL-HADY R.H. 2005. Antidiabetic activity and toxicity of Zizyphus spina-christi leaves. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 101(1-3):129-138.

ABEL M AND KROKOWSKI M. 2001. Pathophysiology of immune-mediated (type 1) diabetes mellitus: potential for immunotherapy. *BioDrugs,* 15(5):291-301.

ABUELGASIM A.I., OSMAN M.K.M., ELMAHDI B. 2008. Effects of *Aloe vera* (Elsabar) ethanolic extract on blood glucose level in Wistar albino rats. *Journal of applied sciences research,* 4(12):1841-1845.

ADLER A.I., STEVENS R.J., NEIL A., STRATTON I.M., BOULTON A.J., HOLMAN R.R. 2002. UKPDS 59: hyperglycaemia and other potentially modifiable risk factors for peripheral vascular disease in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes care,* 25(5):894-899.

AGARWAL O.P. 1985. Prevention of atheromatous heart disease. *Angiology,* 36:485-492.

AJABNOOR M.A. 1990. Effects of *Aloe* on blood glucose levels in normal and alloxan diabetic mice. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 28(2):215-220.

ALESSI C.M AND JUHAN-VAGUE I. 2006. PAI-1 and the Metabolic Syndrome Links, Causes, and Consequences. *Arteriosclerosis thrombosis and vascular biology,* 26:2200-2207.

ALLEN D.A., YAQOOB M.M., HARWOOD S.M. 2005. Mechanisms of high glucose-induced apoptosis and its relationship to diabetic complications. *Journal of nutritional biochemistry,* 16:705-713.

ALMDAL T., SCHARLING H., JENSEN J.S., VESTERGAARD H. 2004. The independent effect of type 2 diabetes mellitus on ischemic heart disease, stroke, and death: a population-based study of 13,000 men and women with 20 years of follow-up. *Archives of internal medicine,* 164(13):1422-1426.

AMERICAN DIABETES ASSICIATION. 2002. Standards of medical care for patients with diabetes. *Diabetes care,* 25 (Suppl.1):S33-S49.

AMOS A., MCCARTY D., ZIMMET P. 1987. The rising global burden of diabetes and its complications: estimates and projections to the year 2010. *Diabetic medicine*, 14: S1–S85.

AUBREY A. 2001. Witwatersrad National Botanical Garden. [web] http://www.plantzafrica.com/plantab/aloeferox.htm. [Date of access: 10 March 2006]

AUSTIN M.A., BRESLOW J.L., HEMEKENS C.H., BURING J.E., WILLET W.C., KRAUSS R.M. 1988. Low-density lipoprotein subclass patterns and risk of myocardial infarction. *Journal of the American medical association,* 260:1917–1921.

BAILEY C.J AND DAY C. 1989. Traditional plant medicines as treatment for diabetes. *Diabetes care,* 12(8):553-564.

BANSAL V., KALITA J., MISRA U.K. 2006. Diabetic neuropathy. *Postgraduate medical journal,* 82(964):95-100.

BARTHOLOMEW J.R AND OLIN J.W. 2006. Pathophysiology of peripheral arterial disease and risk factors for its development. *Cleveland clinic journal of medicine,* 73(4):S8-S14.

BARZILAY J.I., KRONMAL R.A., BITTNER V., EAKER E., EVANS C., FOSTER E.D. 1997. Coronary artery disease in diabetic patients with lower-extremity arterial disease: disease characteristics and survival. A report from the Coronary Artery Surgery Study (CASS) registry. *Diabetes care,* 20(9):1381-1387.

BASTA G., SCHMIDT A.M., DE CATERINA R. 2004. Advanced glycation end products and vascular inflammation: implications for accelerated atherosclerosis in diabetes. *Cardiovascular research,* 63:582-592.

BAYNES J.W. 1991. Role of oxidative stress in development of complications in diabetes. *Diabetes,* 40:405-412.

BAYNES J.W AND THORPE S.R. 1999. Role of oxidative stress in diabetic complications: a new perspective on an old paradigm. *Diabetes,* 48:1-9.

BECKMAN J.A., GOLDFINE A.B., GORDON M.B., CREAGER M.A. 2001. Ascorbate restores endothelium-dependent vasodilation impaired by acute hyperglycaemia in humans. *Circulation,* 103:1618-1623.

BEDOYA F.J., SOLANO F., LUCAS M. 1996. N-monomethyl-arginine and nicotine amide prevent streptozotocin-induced double strand DNA break formation in pancreatic rat islets. *Experientia,* 52:344-347.

BELL G.I AND POLONSKY K.S. 2001. Diabetes mellitus and genetically programmed defects in β-cell function. *Nature,* 13:414(6865):788-91.

BEPPU H., NAKAMURA Y., FUJITA K. 1993. Hypoglycemic and antidiabetic effects in mice of *Aloe* arborescens Miller var. natalensis Berger. *Phytotherapy research,* 7:S37-S42.

BEPPU H., KOIKE T., SHIMPO K., CHIHARA T., HOSHINO M., ISA C., KUZUYA H. 2003. Radical-scavenging affects of *Aloe* arborescens miller on prevention of pancreatic β-cell destruction in rats. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 89:37-45.

BEPPU H., SHIMPO K., CHIHARA T., KANEKO T., TAMAI I., YAMAJI S., OZAKI S., KUZUYA H., SONODA S. 2006. Anti-diabetic effects of dietary administration of *Aloe* arborescens miller components on multiple low-dose streptozotocin-induced diabetes in mice: Investigation on hypoglycemic action and systemic absorption dynamics of *aloe* components. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 103:468-477.

BLOOMGARDEN Z.T. 2004. Consequences of diabetes. Cardiovascular disease. *Diabetes care,* 27(7):1825-1831.

BONNER-WEIR S., TRENT D.F., HONEY R.N., WEIR G.C. 1981. Response of neonatal rat islets tp streptozotocin: limited β-cell regeneration and hyperglycaemia. *Diabetes,* 30:64-69.

BROWNLEE M. 2001. Biochemistry and molecular cell biology of diabetic complications. *Nature,* 414:813-820.

BROWNLEE M. 2003. A radical explanation for glucose-induced β cell dysfunction. *Journal of clinical investigation,* 112(12):1788-1790.

BROWNLEE M. 2005. Banting lecture 2004: The pathology of diabetic complications. A unifying mechanism. *Diabetes,* 54:1615-1625.

BUCALA R AND VLASSARA H. 1995. Advanced glycosylation end products in diabetic renal and vascular disease. *American journal of kidney diseases,* 26:875-888.

BUNYAPRAPHATSARA N., YONGCHAIYUDHA S., RUNGPITARANGSI V., CHOKECHAIJAROENPORN O. 1996. Anti-diabetic activity of *Aloe vera* L. juice. II. Clinical trial in diabetes mellitus patients in combination with glibenclamide. *Phytomedicine,* 3:245-248.

BURSELL S.E., CLERMONT A.C., AIELLO L.P., AIELLO L.M., SCHLOSSMAN D.K., FEENER E.P., LAFFEL L., KING G.L. 1999. High-dose vitamin E supplementation normalizes retinal blood flow and creatinine clearance in patients with type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes care,* 22:1245-1251.

CAMERON N.E AND COTTER M.A. 1999. Effects of antioxidants on nerve and vascular dysfunction in experimental diabetes. *Diabetes research and clinical practice*, 45:137-146.

CAMERON N.E., COTTER M.A., JACK A.M., BASSO M.D., HOHMAN T.C. 1999. Protein kinase C effects on nerve function, perfusion, Na(+), K(+)-ATPase activity and glutathione content in diabetic rats. *Diabetologia,* 42:1120-1130.

CAN A., AKEV N., OZSOY N., BOLKENT S., ARDA B.P., YANARDAG R., OKYAR A. 2004. Effect of *Aloe vera* leaf gel and pulp extracts on the liver in type-II diabetic rat models. *Biological and pharmaceutical bulletin,* 27(5):694-698.

CAO G., SOFIC E., PRIOR R.L. 1997. Antioxidant and prooxidant behavior of flavonoids: structure-activity relationships. *Free radical biology and medicine*, 22(5):749-760.

CAPASSO F., BORELLI F., CAPASSO R., DI CARLO G., IZZO A.A., PINTO L., MASCOLO N., CASTALDO S., LONGO R. 1998. *Aloe* and its therapeutic use. *Phytotherapy research,* 12:S124-S127.

CAPES S.E., HUNT D., MALMBERG.K., GERSTEIN H.C. 2000. Stress hyperglycaemia and increased risk of death after myocardial infarction in patients with and without diabetes: a systematic overview. *Lancet,*355:773-778.

CERIELLO A., QUATRARO A., GIUGLIANO D. 1992. New insights on non-enzymatic glycosylation may lead to therapeutic approaches for the prevention of diabetic complications. *Diabetes medicine,* 9(3):297-299.

CERIELLO A & MOTZ E. 2004. Is oxidative stress the pathogenic mechanism underlying insulin resistance, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease? The common soil hypothesis revisited. *Arteriosclerosis, thrombosis and vascular biology*, 24:816-823.

CHANDAN B.K., SAXENA A.K., SHUKLA S., SHARMA N., GUPTA D.K., SURI K.A., SURI J., BHADAURIA M., SINGH B. 2007. Hepatoprotective potential of *Aloe barbadensis* Mill. Against carbon tetrachloride induced hepatotoxicity. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 111:560–566.

CHAPPEY O., DOSQUET C., WAUTIER M.P., WAUTIER J.L. 1997. Advanced glycation end products, oxidant stress and vascular lesions. *European journal of clinical investigation*, 27:97-108.

CHITHRA P., SAJITHLAL G.B., CHANDRAKASAN G. 1998. Influence of *Aloe vera* on the healing of dermal wounds in diabetic rats. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 59:195-201.

CHUNG S.S.M., HO E.C.M., LAM K.S.L., CHUNG S.K. 2003. Contributions of polyol pathway to diabetes-induced oxidative stress. *Journal of American society of nephrology,* 14:S233-S236.

COLLINS F.M. 2002. Current treatment approaches to type 2 diabetes mellitus: successes and shortcomings. *The American journal of managed care,* 8 (Suppl.):S460-S471.

CONN J.W. 1965. Hypertension, the potassium ion and impaired carbohydrate tolerance. *New England journal of medicine,* 273:1135-1143.

CROSSWHITE F.S AND CROSSWHITE C.D. 1984. *Aloe vera*, plant symbolism and the threshing floor. *Desert plants,* 6:43-50.

CUNNINGHAM A.B. 1993. African medical plants: setting priorities at the interface between conservation and primary healthcare. People and plants working paper 1. UNESCO, Paris.

DACOU-VOUTETAKIS C., ANAGNOSTAKIS D., ZANTHU M. 1975. Marcoglossia, ransient neonatal diabetes mellitus and intrauterine growth failure: a new distinct entity? *Pediatrics,* 55:127-131.

DEFRONZO R.A. 1999. Pharmacologic therapy for type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Annals of internal medicine,* 131:128-303.

DEFRONZO R.A AND GOODMAN A.M. 1995. Efficacy of metformin in patients with non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *New England journal of medicine,* 333:541-549.

DELAHANTY L.M., NATHAN D.M., LACHIN J.M., HU F.B., CLEARY P.A., ZIEGLER G.K., WYLIE-ROSETT J., WEXLER D.J for the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications. 2009. Association of diet with glycated hemoglobin during intensive treatment of type 1 diabetes in the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial. *American Journal of clinical nutrition,* 89(2):518-524.

DE OLIVEIRA S.M.A., TORRES T.C., DA SILVA PEREIRA S.L., DE LIMA MOTA O.M., CARLOS M.X. 2008. Effect of a dentifrice containing *aloe vera* on plaque and gingivitis control. A double-blind clinical study in humans. *Journal of applied oral science,* 16(4):293-296.

DU X.L., EDELSTEIN D., ROSETTI L., FANTUS I.G., GOLDBERG H., ZIYADEH F., WU J., BROWNLEE M. 2000. Hyperglycaemia-induced mitochondrial superoxide overproduction activates the hexosamine pathway and induces plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 expression by increasing Sp1 glycosylation. *Proceedings of the national academy of sciences of the United States of America,* 97:12222-12226.

DU X., MATSUMURA T., EDELSTEIN D., ROSETTI L., ZSENGELLER Z., SZABO C., BROWNLEE M. 2003. Inhibition of GADPH activity by poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase activates three major pathways of hyperglycaemic damage in endothelial cells. *Journal of clinical investigation,* 112:1049-1057.

ELSNER M., GULDBAKKE B., TIEDGE M., MUNDAY R., LENZEN S. 2000. Relative importance of transport and alkylation for pancreatic beta-cell toxicity of streptozotocin. *Diabetologia,* 43:1528-1533.

EMONNOT L., COHEN R., LO M. 2007. Neonatal streptozotocin-induced glucose intolerance: different consequences in Lyon normotensive and hypertensive rats. *Journal of hypertension,* 25:429-438.

FALCONER T.M., EIKELBOOM J.W., HANKEY G.J., NORMAN P.E. 2008. Management of peripheral arterial disease in the elderly: focus on cilostazol. *Clinical interventions in ageing,* 3(1):17-23.

FEINGLOS M.N AND BETHEL M.A. 1998. Treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Medical clinics of North America,* 82:757-790.

FERRANNINI E., NATALI A., CAPALDO B., LEHTOVIRTA M., JACOB S., YKI-JÄRVINEN H. 1997 Insulin resistance, hyperinsulinaemia, and blood pressure: role of age and obesity. European Group for the Study of Insulin Resistance (EGIR). *Hypertension*, 30(5):1144-9.

FIEVET C AND FRUCHART J.C. 1991. HDL heterogeneity and coronary heart disease. *Diabetes/metabolism reviews*, 7:155–162.

FOLSOM A.R., RASMUSSEN M.L., CHAMBLESS L.E., HOWARD G., COOPER L.S., SCHMIDT M.I., HEISS G. 1999. Prospective associations of fasting insulin, body fat distribution, and diabetes with risk of ischemic stroke. The Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities (ARIC) Study Investigators. *Diabetes care*, 22(7):1077-83.

FOX C.S., COADY S., SORLIE P.D., LEVY D., MEIGS J.B., D'AGOSTINO R.B SR., WILSON P.W., SAVAGE P.J. 2004. Trends in cardiovascular complications of diabetes. *Journal of the American medical association*, 292(20):2495-2499.

FULLER J.H., STEVENS L.K., WANG S.L. 2001. Risk factors for cardiovascular mortality and morbidity: the WHO Mutinational Study of Vascular Disease in Diabetes. *Diabetologia*, 44 Suppl 2:S54-64.

FURTH A. 1997. Glycated proteins in diabetes. *British journal of biomedical science*, 54:192-200.

GABRIELY.I., YANG X.M., CASES J.A., MA X.H., ROSSETTI L., BARZILAI N. 2002. Hyperglycaemia induces PAI-1 gene expression in adipose tissue by activation of the hexosamine biosynthetic pathway. *Atherosclerosis,* 160:115-122.

GAEDE P., POULSEN H.E., PARVING H.H., PEDERSEN O. 2001. Double-blind, randomised study of the effect of combined treatment with vitamin C and E on albuminuria in Type 2 diabetic patients. *Diabetic medicine,* 18:756-760.

GANDA O.P., ROSSINI A.A., LIKE A.A. 1976. Studies on STZ diabetes. *Diabetes,* 25:595-603.

GANNON M.C AND NUTTALL F.Q. 2006. Control of blood glucose in type 2 diabetes without weight loss by modification of diet composition. *Nutrition and metabolism,* 3:1-8.

GARCIA M.J., MCNAMARA P.M., GORDON T., KANNEL W.B. 1974. Morbidity and mortality in diabetics in the Framingham population. Sixteen year follow-up study. *Diabetes,* 23(2):105-11.

GERICH J.E. 1989. Drug therapy – oral hypoglycemic agents. *New England journal of medicine,* 321:1231-1243.

GHANNAM N., KINGSTON M., AL-MESHAAL I.A., TARIQ M., PARMAN N.S., WOODHOUSE N. 1986. The antidiabetic activity of *aloes*: preliminary clinical and experimental observations. *Hormone research,* 24(4):288-294.

GIUGLIANO D., CERIELLO A., PAOLISSO G. 1996. Oxidative stress and diabetic vascular complications. *Diabetes care,* 19:257-267.

GIUGLIANO D., CERIELLO A., ESPOSITO K. 2008. Glucose metabolism and hyperglycaemia. *American journal of clinical nutrition,* 87(1):217S-222S.

GOLDBERG H.J., WHITESIDE C.I., FANTUS I.G. 2002. The hexosamine pathway regulates the plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 gene promoter and Sp1 transcriptional activation through protein kinase C-beta I and -delta. The *Journal of biological chemistry,* 277:33833-33841.

GOLDNER M.G AND GOMORI G. 1943. Alloxan diabetes in the dog. *Endocrinology,* 33:297-308.

GOODPASTER B.H., KELLEY D.E., WING R.R., MEIER A., THAETE F.L. 1999. Effects of weight loss on regional fat distribution and insulin sensitivity in obesity. *Diabetes,* 48:839–847.

GRUNNET M.L. 1963. Cerebrovascular disease: diabetes and cerebral atherosclerosis. *Neurology,* 13:486-91.

GUERRERO-ANALCO J., MEDINA-CAMPOS O., BRINDIS F., BYE R., PEDRAZA-CHAVERRI J., NAVARRETE A., MATA R. 2007. Antidiabetic properties of selected Mexican copalchis of the Rubiaceae family. *Phytochemistry,* 68(15):2087-2095.

GUNDIDZA M., MASUKU S., HUMPHREY G., MAGWA M.L. 2005. Anti-diabetic activity of *Aloe* excelsa. *Central African journal,* 51(11-12):115-120.

HALES C.N., BARKER D.J., CLARK P.M., COX L.J., FALL C., OSMOND C., WNTER P.D. 1991. Foetal and infant growth and impaired glucose tolerance at age 64. *British medical journal,* 303:1019-1022.

HAMMES H.P., ALT A., NIWA T., CLAUSEN J.T., BRETZEL R.G., BROWNLEE M., SCHLEICHER E.D. 1999. Differential accumulation of advanced glycation end products in the course of diabetic retinopathy. *Diabetologia,* 42:728-736.

HAMSTEN A., DE FAIRE U., WALLDIUS G., DAHLEN G., SZAMOSI A., LANDOU C., BLOMBACK M., WIMAN B. 1987. Plasminogen activator inhibitor in plasma: risk factor for recurrent myocardial infarction. *Lancet,* 2:3–9.

HARRIS M.I. 1991. Epidemiologica correlates of NIDDM in Hipsanics, whites and blacks in the U.D population. *Diabetes care,* 14(Suppl 3):639-648.

HAVEL R.J. 1990. Role of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins in progression of atherosclerosis. *Circulation,* 82:694–696.

HEINEMANN L., STAREKE A.A.R., HEDING L., JENSIN I., BERGER M. 1990. Action profiles of fats onset insulin analogues. *Diabetologia,* 33:384-386.

HEMMINGS S.J AND SPAFFORD D. 2000. Neonatal STZ model of type II diabetes mellitus in the Fischerr 344 rat: characteristics and assessment of the status of the hepatic adrenergic receptors. *International journal of biochemistry and cellular biology,* 32:905-919.

HENRY R.R., WALLACE P., OLEFSKY J.M. 1986. Effects of weight loss on mechanisms of hyperglycaemia in obese non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes,* 35:990–998.

HINIKO H., TAKANASHI T., MURAKAMI C., KONNO Y., MIRIN Y., KARIKUTA M., HAYASHI T. 1986. Isolation and hypoglycaemic activity of arborans A and B, glycans of *Aloe arborescens* var. *natalensis* leaves. *International journal of crude drug research,* 24:183-186.

HOLLANDER P.A., ELBEIN S.C., HIRSCH I.B., KELLEY D., MCGILL J., TAYLOR T., WEISS S.R., CROCKETT S.E., KAPLAN R.A., COMSTOCK J., LUCAS C.P., LODEWICK P.A., CANOVATCHEL W., CHUNG J., HAUPTMAN J. 1998. Role of Orlistat in the treatment of obese patients with type 2 diabetes: a 1-year randomized double blind study. *Diabetes Care,* 21:1288–1294.

HORI O., BRETT J., SLATTERY T., CAO R., ZHANG J., CHEN J.X., NAGASHIMA M., LUNDH M., VIJAY S., NITECKI D., MORSER J., STERN D., SCHMIDT A.M. 1995. RAGE is a cellular binding site for amphoterin: mediation of neurite outgrowth and co-expression of RAGE and amphoterin in the developing nervous system. *Journal of biological chemistry* 270:25752– 61.

HOUNSOM L., CORDER R., PATEL J., TOMLINSON D.R. 2001. Oxidative stress participates in the breakdown of neuronal phenotype in experimental diabetic neuropathy. *Diabetologia,* 44:424-428.

HUTTON J.C., SCHOFIELD P.H., WILLIAMS J.F., REGTOP H.L., HOLLOWS F.C. 1976. The effect of an unsaturated-fat diet on cataract formation in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Britisj journal of nutrition,* 36:161-177.

HUXLEY R., BARZI F., WOODWARD M. 2006. Excess risk of fatal coronary heart disease associated with diabetes in men and women: meta-analysis of 37 prospective cohort studies. *British medical journal,* 332(7533):73-8.

HYÖTY H AND TAYLOR KW. 2002. The role of viruses in human diabetes. *Diabetologia*, 45(10):1353-1361.

INGELSSON E., ARNLÖV J., SUNDSTRÖM J., RISÉRUS U., MICHAËLSSON K., BYBERG L. 2009. Relative importance and conjoint effects of obesity and physical inactivity for the development of insulin resistance. *European journal of cardiovascular prevention and rehabilitation,* 16(1):28-33.

INOGUCHI T., UMEDA F., KUNISAKI M., ISHII H., YAMAUCHI T., NAWATA H. 1991. Platelet stimulation for prostacyclin production in aortic endothelial cell cultures: alteration in diabetes mellitus. *Hormone and metabolic research, 23*(11):539-44.

INTERNATIONAL DIABETES FEDERATION. 2006. Diabetes atlas. [Web:] http://www.idf.org/ (Date used: 31 Sept. 2007).

ISHII H., JIROUSEK M.R., KOYA D., TAKAGI C., XIA P., CLERMONT A., BURSELL S.E., KERN T.S., BALLAS L.M., HEATH W.F., STRAMM L.E., FEENER E.P., KING G.L. 1996. Amelioration of vascular dysfunctions in diabetic rats by an oral PKC beta inhibitor. *Science,* 272:728-731.

ISLAM M.S. AND CHOI H. 2007. Nongenetic model of type 2 diabetes: a comparative study. *Pharmacology,* 79:243-249.

ISLAM M.S., LOOTS Du T. 2009. Experimental rodent models of type 2 diabetes: a review. *Methods and findings in experimental and clinical pharmacology.* 31(4):249-61.

IWASE M., KICHUCHI M., NUNOI K., WAKISAKA M., MAKI Y., SADOSHIMA S., FUJISHIMA M. 1998. A new model of type 2 (non-insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus in spontaneously hypertensive rats: diabetes induced by neonatal streptozotocin injection. *Diabetologia,* 29:808-811.

IZKHAKOV E., MELTZER E., RUBINSTEIN A. 2003. Pathogenesis and management of diabetic dyslipidaemia. *Treatments in endocrinology,* 2(4):231-245.

JACOBSEN P.K. 2005. Preventing end-stage renal disease in diabetic patients - dual blockade of the renin-angiotensin system (Part II). *Journal of the renin angiotensin aldosterone system,* 6(2):55-68.

JAFERNEJAD A., BATHAIE S.Z., NAKHJAVANI M., HASSAN M.Z. 2007. Effects of spermine on lipid profile and LDL functionality in the streptozotocin-induced diabetic rat model. *Life sciences,* 82:301-307.

JAMES L.R., TANG D., INGRAM A., LY H., THAI K., CAI L., SCHOLEY J.W. 2002. Flux through the hexosamine pathway is a determinant of nuclear factor kappaB- dependent promoter activation. *Diabetes,* 51:1146-1156.

JEFFCOATE S.L. 2004. Diabetes control and complications: the role of glycated haemoglobin, 25 years on. *Diabetic medical journal,* 21(7):657-665.

JENKINS A.J., LYONS T.J., ZHENG D., OTVOS J.D., LACKLAND D.T., MCGEE D., GARVEY W.T., KLEIN R.L., DCCT/EDIC RESEARCH GROUP. 2003. Lipoproteins in the DCCT/EDIC cohort: associations with diabetic nephropathy. *Kidney international,* 64(3):817-828.

JONAS J.C., SHARMA A., HASENKAMP W., ILKOVA H., PATANE G., LAYBUTT R., BONNER-WEIR S., WEIR G.C. 1999. Chronic hyperglycaemia triggers loss of pancreatic β-cell differentiation in an animal model of diabetes. *Journal of biological chemistry,* 274:14112-14121.

JOOST H.G. 1985. Extrapancreatic effects of hypoglycemic sulfonylureas: still a controversial issue. *Trends in pharmacological sciences,* 6:239-241.

JUHAN-VAGUE I., PYKE S.D.M., ALESSI M.C., JESPERSEN J., HAVERKATE F., THOMPSON S.G. 1996. Fibrinolytic factors and the risk of myocardial infarction or sudden death in patients with angina pectoris. *Circulation,* 94:2057–2063.

JUN H.S AND YOON J.W. 2001. The role of viruses in type I diabetes: two distinct cellular and molecular pathogenic mechanisms of virus-induced diabetes in animals. *Diabetologia,* 44(3):271-285.

JUNOD A., LAMBERT A.E., STAUFFACHER W., RENOLD A.E. 1967. Diabetogenic action of streptozotocin. *Proceeding of the society of experimental biology and medicine,* 126:201-205.

KAMETANI S., OIKAWA T., KOJIMA-YUASA A., KENNEDY D.O., NORIKURA T., HONZAWA M., MATSUI-YUASA I. 2007. Mechanism of growth inhibitory effect of cape *aloe* extract in ehrlich ascites tumor cells. *Journal of nutritional science and vitaminology,* 53(6):540-546.

KAWANASHI K., UEDA H., MORIAYSU M. 2003. Aldose reductase inhibitors from the nature. *Current medicinal chemistry,* 10:1353-1374.

KELLEY D., WING R.R., BUONOCORE C., STURIS J., POLONSKY K., FITZSIMMONS M. 1993. Relative effects of calorie restriction and weight loss in non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus. *Journal of clinical endocrinology and metabolism,* 77:1287–1293.

KELLEY D.E., GOODPASTER B., WING R.R., SIMONEAU J-A. 1999. Skeletal muscle fatty acid metabolism in association with insulin resistance, obesity and weight loss. *American journal of physiology,* 277:E1130–E1141.

KELLEY D.E., BRAY G.A., PI-SUNYER F.X., KLEIN S., HILL J., MILES J., HOLLANDER P. 2002. Clinical efficacy of Orlistat therapy in overweight and obese patients with insulin-treated type 2 diabetes: a 1-year randomized controlled trial. *Diabetes care* 25:1033–1041.

KERNOHAN A.F., PERRY C.G., SMALL M. 2003. Clinical impact of the new criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus. *Clinical chemistry and laboratory medicine,* 41(9):1239-1245.

KIM J.D., KANG S.M., CHOI H.Y., CHOI H.S., KU S.K. 2006. Anti-diabetic activity of SMK001, a poly herbal formula in streptozotocin induced diabetic rats: therapeutic study. *Biological and pharmaceutical bulletin,* 29(3):477-482.

KIM K., KIM H., KWON J., LEE S., KONG H., IM S.A., LEE Y.H., LEE Y.R., OH S.T., JO T.H., PARK Y.I., LEE C.K., KIM K. 2009. Hypoglycemic and hypolipidaemic effects of processed *Aloe vera* gel in a mouse model of non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Phytomedicine,* 16(9):856-863.

KING G.L AND LOEKEN M.R. 2004. Hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress in diabetic complications. *Histochemistry and cellular biology,* 122:333-338.

KODAMA T., IWASE M., NUNOI K., MAKI Y., YOSHINARI M., FUJISHIMA M. 1993. A new diabetes model induced by neonatal alloxan treatment in rats. *Diabetes research and clinical practice,* 20:183-189.

KOHLER H.P AND GRANT P.J. 2000. Plasminogen-activator inhibitor type 1 and coronary artery disease. *New England journal of medicine,* 342:1792–1801.

KOO M.W.L. 1994. *Aloe vera.* Anti-ulcer and anti-diabetic effects. *Phytotherapy research,* 8:461-464.

KORSHUNOV S.S., SKULACHEV V.P., STARKOV A.A. 1997. High protonic potential attenuates a mechanism of production of reactive oxygen species in mitochondria. *European journal of clinical chemistry (FEBS) letters*, 416:15-18.

KOWLURU R.A AND KENNEDY A. 2001. Therapeutic potential of anti-oxidants and diabetic retinopathy. *Expert opinion in investigational drugs,* 10:1665-1676.

KOWLURU R.A. 2003. Effect of reinstitution of good glycaemic control on retinal oxidative stress and nitrative stress in diabetic rats. *Diabetes,* 52(3):818-823.

KOYA D., LEE I.K., ISHII H., KANOH H., KING G.L. 1997. Prevention of glomerular dysfunction in diabetic rats by treatment with d-alpha-tocopherol. *Journal of the American society of nephrology,* 8:426-435.

KRAUSS R.M. 2004. Lipids and lipoproteins in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes care,* 27(6):1469-1504.

KUNISAKI M., BURSELL S.E., CLERMONT A.C., ISHII H., BALLAS L.M., JIROUSEK M.R., UMEDA F., NAWATA H., KING G.L. 1995. Vitamin E prevents diabetes-induced abnormal retinal blood flow via the diacylglycerol-protein kinase C pathway. *American journal of physiology,* 269:E239-E246.

KUROKI T., ISSHIKI K., KING G.L. 2003. Oxidative stress: the lead or supporting actor in the pathogenesis of diabetic complications. *Journal of the American society of nephrology,* 41:S216-S220.

KURUP S AND BHONDE B.R. 2000. Combined effects of nicotinamide and streptozotocin on diabetic status in partially pancreatectomized adult BALB/c mice. *Hormone and metabolic research,* 32:330-334.

LARSON R.A. 1988. The antioxidants of higher plants. *Phytochemistry,* 27:969-978.

LEAHY J.L., BONNER-WEIR S., WEIR G.C. 1988. Minimal chronic hyperglycaemia is a critical determinant of impaired insulin secretion after an incomplete pancreatectomy. *Journal of clinical investigation,* 81:1407-1414.

LEE K.Y., WEINTRAUB S.T., YU B.P. 2000. Isolation and identification of a phenolic antioxidant from *Aloe barbadensis. Free radical biology and medicine,* 28:261-265.

LEWIS G.F., O'MEARA N.M., SOLTYS P.A., BLAKMAN J.D., IVERIUS P.H., PUGH W.L., GETZ G.S., POLONSLY K.S. 1991. Fasting hypertriglyceridaemia in non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus is an important prediction n of postprandial lipid and lipoprotein abnormalities. *Journal of clinical endocrinology and metabolism,* 72:934-944.

LIKE A.A AND ROSSINI A.A. 1976. Streptozotocin-induced pancreatic insulitis: new model of diabetes mellitus. *Science,* 193:415.

LIKE A.A., APPEL M.C., WILLIAMS R.M., ROSSINI A.A. 1978. Streptozotocin-induced pancreatic insulitis in mice. Morphologic and physiologic studies. *Laboratory investigation,* 38:470-486.

LOOTS, DU T. 2008. *Aloe*: A medicinal plant for treating diabetes (*In* Recent progress in medicinal plants. Vol. 21: Phytopharmacology and therapeutic values III. p. 459-472).

LOSKUTOFF D.J AND SAMAD F. 1998. The adipocyte and hemostatic balance in obesity studies of PAI-1. *Arteriosclerosis thrombosis and vascular biology,* 18:1-6.

LUKOVITS T.G., MAZZONE T.M., GORELICK T.M. 1999. Diabetes mellitus and cerebrovascular disease. *Neuroepidemiology,* 18(1):1-14.

LUNA B AND FEINGLOS M.N. 2001. Oral agents in the management of type 2 diabetes mellitus. *American family physician,* 63(9):1747-1756.

LUO J., QUAN J., TSAI J., HOBENSACK C.K., SULLIVAN C. 1998. Nongenetic mouse models of non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Metabolism,* 47:663-668.

LYONS T.J., KLEIN R.L., BAYNES J.W., STEVENSON H.C., LOPES-VIRELLA M.F. 1987. Stimulation of cholesteryl ester synthesis in human monocyte-derived macrophages by lipoproteins from type I diabetic subjects: the influence of non-enzymatic glycosylation of low-density lipoproteins. *Diabetologia,* 30:916–923.

LYONS T.J., JENKINS A.J., ZHENG D., LACKLAND D.T., MCGEE D., GARVEY W.T., KLEIN R.L. 2004. Diabetic retinopathy and serum lipoprotein subclasses in the DCCT/EDIC cohort. *Investigative ophthalmology and visual science,* 45:910-918.

MACLAREN N., LAN M., COUTANT R., SCHATZ D., SILVERSTEIN J., MUIR A., CLARE-SALZER M., SHE J.X., MALONE J., CROCKETT S., SCHWARTZ S., QUATTRIN T., DESILVA M., VANDER VEGT P., NOTKINS A., KRISCHER J. 1999. Only multiple autoantibodies to islet cells (ICA), insulin, GAD65, IA-2 and IA-2beta predict immune-mediated (Type 1) diabetes in relatives. *Journal of autoimmunity,* 12(4):279-87.

MAKITA Z., BUCALA R., RAYFIELD E.J., FRIEDMAN E.A., KAUFMAN A.M., KORBET S.M., BARTH R.H., WINSTON J.A., FUH H., MANOGUE K.R. 1994. Reactive glycosylation endproducts in diabetic uraemia and treatment of renal failure. *Lancet,* 343:1519-1522.

MARKER J AND MACLAREN N. 2001. Immunopathology of immune-mediated (type 1) diabetes. *Clinical and laboratory medicine,* 21(1):15-30.

MARTÍN-GALLÁN P., CARRASCOSA A., GUSSINYÉ M., DOMÍNGUEZ C. 2002. Biomarkers of diabetes-associated oxidative stress and antioxidant status in young diabetic patients with or without subclinical complications. *Free radical biology and medicine,* 34(12):1563-1574.

MASIELLO P., PAOLI A.A., BERGAMINI E. 1979. Influence of age on the sensitivity of the rat to streptozotocin. *Hormone research,* 11(5):262-274.

MCAULEY K.A., WILLIAMS S.M., MANN J.I., GOULDING A., CHRISHOLM A., WILSON N., STORY G., MCLAY R.T., HARPER M.J., JONES I.E. 2002. Intensive lifestyle changes are necessary to improve insulin sensitivity. *Diabetes care,* 25:445–452.

MCCLAIN D.A AND CROOK E.D. 1996. Hexosamines and insulin resistance. *Diabetes,* 45:1003-1009.

MIROUZE J. 1983. A non-stop revolution. *Diabetes,* 25:209-221.

MORTON J.F. 1961. Folk uses and commercial exploitation of *aloe* leaf pulp. *Economic botany,* 15:311-319.

MUNTNER P., WILDMAN R.P., REYNOLDS K., DESALVO K.B., CHEN J., FONSECA V. 2005. Relationship between HbA1c level and peripheral arterial disease. *Diabetes care,* 28:1891–1897.

MYERS M.A., RABIN D.U., ROWLEY M.J. 1995. Pancreatic islet cell cytoplasmic antibody in diabetes is represented by antibodies to islet cell antigen 512 and glutamic acid decarboxylase. *Diabetes,* 44:1290-1295.

NAGATA M., SUZUKI W., IIZUKA S., TABUCHI M., MARUYAMA H., TAKEDA S., ABURADA M., MIYAMOTO K. 2006. Type 2 diabetes mellitus in obese mouce model induced by monosodium glutamate. *Experimental animals,* 55:109-115.

NAIR M. 2007. Diabetes mellitus, Part 1: physiology and complications. *British journal of nursing,* 16(3): 184-188.

NATHAN D.M. 1993. Long-term complications of diabetes mellitus. *New England journal of medicine*, 328(23):1676-85.

NATHAN D.M., BUSE J.B., DAVIDSON M.B., FERRANNINI E., HOLMAN R.R., SHERWIN R., ZINMAN B. 2009. Medical management of hyperglycaemia in type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy. *Diabetes care,* 32:193-203.

NATIONAL DIABETES DATA GROUP. 1979. Classification and diagnosis of diabetes mellitus and other categories of glucose intolerance. *Diabetes,* 28:1039-1057.

OKYAR A., CAN A., AKEV N., BAKTIR G., SÜTLÜPINAR N. 2001. Effect of *Aloe vera* leaves on blood glucose level in type I and type II diabetic rat models. *Phytotherapy research,* 15:157-161.

OU B., HUANG D., HAMPSCH-WOODILL M., FLANAGAN J.A., DEEMER E.K. 2002. Analysis of antioxidant activities among common vegetables employing oxygen radical absorbance capacity (ORAC) and ferric reducing antioxidant power assays: a comparative study. *Journal of agricultural food chemistry,* 50:3122-3128.

OZTURK Y., ATLAN V.M., YILDIZOGLU-ARI N. 1996. Effects of experimental diabetes and insulin on smooth muscle functions. *Pharmacological reviews,* 48:69-112.

PARVING H.H., LEHNERT H., BRÖCHNER-MORTENSEN J., GOMIS R., ANDERSEN S., ARNER P., Irbesartan in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes and Microalbuminuria Study Group. 2001. The effect of irbesartan on the development of diabetic nephropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes. *New England journal of medicine,* 345(12):870-878.

PAULS F AND BANCROFT R.W. 1950. Production of diabetes in the mouse by partial pancreatectomy. *American journal of physiology,* 160:103-106.

PETITTI D.B., IMPERATORE G., PALLA S.L., DANIELS S.R., DOLAN L.M., KERSHNAR A.K., MARCOVINA S., PETTITT D.J., PIHOKER C., SEARCH for Diabetes in Youth Study Group. 2007. Serum lipids and glucose control: the SEARCH for Diabetes in Youth study. *Archives in pediatric and adolescent medicine,* 161(2):159-65.

PIETILÄINEN KH., RISSANEN A., KAPRIO J., MÄKIMATTILA S., HÄKKINEN A.M., WESTERBACKA J., SUTINEN J., VEHKAVAARA S., YKI-JÄRVINEN H. 2005. Acquired obesity is associated with increased liver fat, intra-abdominal fat, and insulin resistance in young adult monozygotic twins. *American journal of physiology, endocrinology and metabolism*, 288(4):E768-74.

RAJASEKARAN S., SIVAGNANAM K., RAVI K., SUBRAMANIAN S. 2004. *Journal of medicinal food,* 7(1):61-66.

RAJASEKARAN S., SIVAGNANAM K., SUBRAMANIAN S. 2005a. Modulatory effects of *aloe vera* leaf gel extract on oxidative stress in rats treated with streptozotocin. *Journal of pharmacy and pharmacology,* 57:241-246.

RAJASEKARAN S., SIVAGNAMAN K., SUBRAMANIAN S. 2005b. Antioxidant effect of *Aloe vera* gel extract in streptozotocin-induced diabetes in rats. *Pharmacological reports,* 57:90-96.

RAJASEKARAN S., RAVI K., SIVAGNAMAN K., SUBRIMANIAM S. 2006. Beneficial effects of *aloe vera* leaf gel extract on lipid profile status in rats with streptozotocin diabetes. *Clinical and experimental pharmacology and physiology,* 33:232-237.

RAKIETEN N., RAKIETEN M.L., NADKARNI M.V. 1963. Studies on the diabetogenic action of streptozotocin (NSC-37917). *Cancer chemotherapy report,* 29:91-98.

RANHOTRS H.S AND SHARMA R. 2000. Streptozotocin-induced diabetes and glucocorticoid receptor regulation: tissue- and age-specific variation. *Mechanisms and ageing and development,* 119:15-24.

RASKIN P., RAPPOPORT E.B., COLE S.T., YAN Y., PATWARDHAN R., FREED M.I. 2000. Roziglitazone short-term monotherapy lowers fasting and post-prandial glucose in patients with type II diabetes. *Diabetologia,* 43:278-284.

REDDY S AND SANDLER S. 1995. Age-dependent sensitivity to sterptozotocin of pancreatic islets isolated from male NOD mice. *Autoimmunity,* 22(2):121-126.

REED M.J., MESZAROS K., ENTES L.J., CLAYPOOL M.D., PINKETT J.G., GADBIOS T.M., REAVEN G.M. 2000. A new rat model of type 2 diabetes: the fat-fed, streptozotocin-treated ras. *Metabolism,* 49:1390-1394.

RERUP C.C. 1970. Drugs producing diabetes through damage of insulin secreting cells. *Pharmacological reviews,* 22:485-518.

RESMINI E., MINUTO F., COLAO A., FERONE D. 2009. Secondary diabetes associated with principal endocrinopathies: the impact of new treatment modalities. *Acta diabetologia,* 46(2):85-95.

REYNOLDS T & DWECK A.C. 1999. *Aloe vera* leaf gel: a review update. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 68:3-37.

RILEY W.J., McCONNEL T.J., MACLAREN N.K., McLAUGHLIN J.V., TAYLOR G. 1981. The diabetogenic effects of streptozotocin in mine are prolonged and inversely related to age. *Diabetes,* 30(9):718-723.

ROBERTSON C. 2001. Diabetes update. The untold story of disease progression. *RN,* 64:60-64.

ROLO A.P AND PALMEIRA C.M. 2006. Diabetes and mitochondrial function: role of hyperglycaemia and oxidative stress. *Toxicology and applied pharmacology,* 212(2):167-178.

ROSSING K. 2007. Progression and remission of nephropathy in type 2 diabetes: new strategies of treatment and monitoring. *Danish medical bulletin*, 54(2):79-98.

ROSSINI A.A., LIKE A.A., CHICK W.L., APPEL M.C., CAHILL G.F. Jr. 1977. Studies of streptozotocin-induced insulitis and diabetes. *Proceeding of national academy of science, USA,* 74:2485.

SAITO H. 1993. Purification of active substances of *Aloe* arborescens Miller and their biological and pharmacological activity. *Phytotherapy research,* 7S14-S19.

SALTIEL A.R. AND OLEFSKY J.M. 1996. Thiazolidinediones in the treatment on insulin resistance and type II diabetes. *Diabetes,* 45:1661-1669.

SANDLER S AND SWENNE I. 1983. Streptozotocin, but not alloxan, induces DNA repair synthesis in mouse pancreatic islets in vitro. *Diabetologia,* 25:1326-1333.

SAVITSKY P.A AND FINKEL T. 2002. Redox regulation of Cdc25C. *The Journal of biological chemistry,* 277:20535-20540.

SELL D AND MONNIER VM. 1989. Structure elucidation of senescence cross-link from human extracellular matrix: implication of pentoses in the aging process. *Journal of biological chemistry,* 264:21597–602.

SHARMA A., KHARB S., CHUGH S.N., KAKKAR R., SINGH G.P. 2000. Evaluation ofd oxidative stress before and after control of glycemia and after vitamin E supplementation in diabetic patients. *Metabolism,* 49:160-162.

SHARPE P.C., YUE K.K., CATHERWOOD M.A., MCMASTER D., TRIMBLE E.R. 1998. The effects of glucose-induced oxidative stress on growth and extracellular matrix gene expression of vascular smooth muscle cells. *Diabetologia,* 41:1210-1219.

SHINDE U.A AND GOYAL R.K. 2003. Effect of chromium picolinate on histopathological alterations in STZ and neonatal STZ diabetic rats. *Journal of cellular and molecular medicine,* 7:322-329.

SIMMONS R.A., TEMPLETON L.J., GERTZ S.J. 2001. Intrauterine growth retardation leads to the development of type 2 diabetes in the rat. *Diabetes,* 50:2279-2286.

SINGH R., BARDEN A., MORI T., BEILIN L. 2001. Advanced glycation end-products: a review. *Diabetologia,* 44:129-146.

SINGH N., KAMATH V., RAJINI P.S. 2005. Attenuation of hyperglycaemia and associated biochemical parameters in STZ-induced diabetic rats by dietary supplementation of potato peel powder. *Clinica chimica acta,* 353:165-175.

SMITH A., PATTERSON C., YARNELL J., RUMLEY A., BEN-SHLOMO Y., LOWE G. 2005. Which hemostatic markers add to the predictive value of conventional riskfactors for coronary heart disease and ischemic stroke? The Caerphilly Study. *Circulation,* 112:3080 –3087.

SOBEL B.E., TAATJES D.J., SCHNEIDER D.J. 2003. Intramural plasminogen activator inhibitor type-1 and coronary atherosclerosis. *Arteriosclerosis thrombosis and vascular biology,* 23:1979 –1989.

SRINIVSON K., VISWANAD B., ASRAT L., KAUL C.L., RAMARAO P. 2005. Combination of high-fat diet-fed and low-dose streptozotocin-treated rat: A model for type 2 diabetes and pharmacological screening. *Pharamacological research,* 125:451-472.

SRINIVAN K AND RAMARAO P. 2007. Animal models in type 2 diabetes research: an overview. *Indian journal of medical research,* 125:451-472.

STUDER R.K., CRAVEN P.A., DERUBERTIS F.R. 1997. Antioxidant inhibition of protein kinase C-signaled increases in transforming growth factor-beta in mesangial cells. *Metabolism,* 46:918-925.

STURGESS N.C., ASHFORD M.L.J., COOK D., HALES N.C. 1985. The sulfonylurea receptor may be an ATP sensitive potassium channel. *Lancet,* ii:474-475.

SZKUDELSKI T. 2001. The mechanism of alloxan and streptozotocin action in β-cells of the rat pancreas. *Physiological research,* 50:536-546.

TAN C.E., FORSTER L., CASLAKE M.J., BEDFORD D., WATSON T.D.G., McCONNELL M., PACKARD C.J., SHEPHERD J. 1995. Relation between plasma lipids and phostheparin plasma lipases and VLDL and LDL subfraction patterns in normolipidemic men and wome. *Arteriosclerosis, thrombosis and vascular biology,* 15:1839-1848.

TAPLAN C.E AND BARKER J.M. 2008. Autoantibodies in type 1 diabetes. *Autoimmunity,* 41(1):11-18.

TESFAYE S., CHATURVEDI N., EATON S.E., WARD J.D., MANES C., IONESCU-TIRGOVISTE C., WITTE D.R., FULLER J.H., EURODIAB PROSPECTIVE COMPLICATIONS STUDY GROUP. 2005. Vascular risk factors and diabetic neuropathy. *New England journal of medicine,* 352:341-350.

THE DIABETES CONTROL AND COMPLICATIONS TRIAL RESEARCH GROUP. 1993. The effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the development and progression of long-term complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *New England journal of medicine,* 329:977-986.

THE EXPERT COMMITTEE ON THE DIAGNOSIS AND CLASSIFICATION OF DIABETES MELLITUS. 2002. Report of the expert committee on the diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes care*, 25(Suppl. 1):S5-S20.

THORNALLEY P.J., LANGBORG A., MINHAS H.S. 1999. Formation of glyoxal, methylglyoxal and 3-deoxyglucosone in the glycation of proteins by glucose. *Biochemical journal,* 344:106–16.

THRING T.S.A & WEITZ F.M. 2005. Medicinal plant use in the Bredasdorp/Elim region of the Southern Overberg in the Western Cape Province of South Africa. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 15 [epub ahead of print].

TURK J., CORBETT J.A., RAMANADHAM S., BOHRER A., MCDANIEL M.L. 1993. Biochemical evidence for nitric oxide formation from streptozotocin in isolated pancreatic islets. *Biochemical and biophysical research communications,* 197(3):1458-1464.

TURNER N.C AND CLAPHAM J.C. 1998. Insulin resistance, impaired glucose tolerance and non-insulin-dependent diabetes, pathologic mechanisms and treatment: current status and therapeutic possibilities. *Progressive drug research,* 51:33-94.

UK PROSPECTIVE DIABETES STUDY (UKPDS) GROUP. 1998. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). *Lancet,* 352:837-853.

VACCARO O., EBERLY L.E., NEATON J.D., YANG L., RICCARDI G., STAMLER J., Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial Research Group. 2004. Impact of diabetes and previous myocardial infarction on long-term survival: 25-year mortality follow-up of primary screenees of the Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial. *Archives of internal medicine,* 164(13):1438-43.

VAN WYK B.E AND SMITH G. 1996. Guide to the *Aloes* of South Africa. Briza Publications, Pretoria.

VENUGOPAL S.K., DEVARAJ S., YANG T., JIALAL I. 2002. Alpha-tocopherol decreases superoxide anion release in human monocytes under hyperglycaemic conditions via inhibition of protein kinase C-alpha. *Diabetes,* 51:3049-3054.

VOLGER B.K AND ERNST E. 1999. *Aloe vera*: a systematic review of its clinical effectiveness. *British journal of general practice,* 49:823-828.

VUGUIN P. RAAB E., LIU B., BARZILIA N., SIMMONS R. 2004. Hepatic insulin resistance precedes the development of diabetes in a model of intrauterine growth retardation. *Diabetes,* 53:2617-2622.

WAJCHENBERG B.L. 2007. Postprandial glycemia and cardiovascular disease in diabetes mellitus. *Arquivos brasileiros de endocrinologia e metabologia,* 15:212-221.

WATSON T.D., CASLAKE M.J., FREEMAN D.J., GRIFFIN B.A., HINNIE J., ACKARD C.J., SHEPHERD J. 1994. Determinants of LDL subfraction distribution and concentration in young normolipidaemic subjects. *Arteriosclerosis and thrombosis,* 14:902-910.

WEST E., SIMON O.R., MORRISON E.Y. 1996. Streptozotocin alters pancreatic beta-cell responsiveness to glucose within six hours of injection into rats. *The West Indian medical journal,* 45(2):60-62.

WOHAIEB S.A AND GODIN D.V. 1987. Alterations in free radical tissue-defense mechanisms in streptozocin-induced diabetes in rat. Effects of insulin treatment. *Diabetes,* 36:1014-1018.

WHO EXPERT COMMITTEE ON DIABETES MELLITUS. Second report, Geneva: WHO, 1980. Technical Report Series 646.

WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION. 1985. Diabetes mellitus: Report of a WHO study group. Geneva. World Health Org., (Tech. Rep. Ser. No. 727).

WHO Department of Noncommunicable Disease Surveillance. 1999. definition and diagnosis of diabetes mellitus and intermediate hyperglycaemia: Report of a WHO/IDF consultation.

WOLF A.M., CONAWAY M.R., CROWTHER J.Q., HAZEN K.Y., L NADLER J., ONEIDA B., BOVBJERG V.E., Improving Control with Activity and Nutrition (ICAN) Study. 2004. Translating lifestyle intervention to practice in obese patients with type 2 diabetes: Improving Control with Activity and Nutrition (ICAN) study. *Diabetes care,* 27(7):1570-6.

WRIGHT E Jr., SCISM-BACON J.L., GLASS L.C. 2006. Oxidative stress in type 2 diabetes: the role of fasting and postprandial glycaemia. *International journal of clinical practice,* 60(3):308-314.

YAGI A., KABASH A., OKAMURA N., HARAGUCHI H., MOUSTAFA S.M., KHALIFA T.I. 2002. Antioxidant, free radical scavenging and anti-inflammatory effects of aloesin derivatives in *Aloe vera.* *Planta medica,* 68:957-960.

YAN S.D., CHEN X., FU J., CHEN M., ZHU H., ROHER A., SLATTERY T., ZHAO L., NAGASHIMA M., MORSER J., MIGHELI A., NAWROTH P., STERN D., SCHMIDT A.M. 1996. RAGE and amyloid-h peptide neurotoxicity in Alzheimer's disease. *Nature,* 382:685–91.

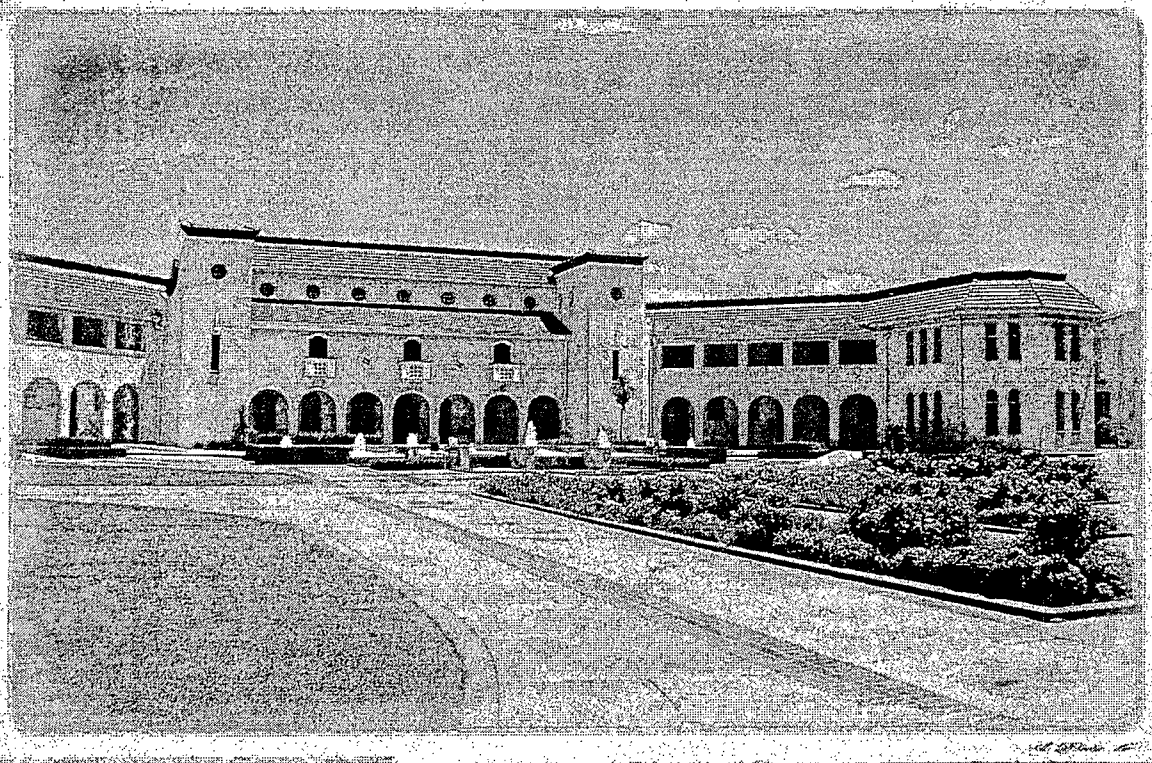
YONGCHAIYUDHA S., RUNGPITARANGSI V., BUNYAPRAPHATSARA N. CHOKECHAIJAROENPORN O. 1996. Antidiabetic activity of *aloe vera* L. juice. I. Clinical trial in new diabetes mellitus. *Phytomedicine,* 3:241-234.

YÜLEK F., OR M., OZOĞUL C., ISIK A.C., ARI N., STEFEK M., BAUER V., KARASU C. 2007. Effects of stobadine and vitamin E in diabetes-induced retinal abnormalities: involvement of oxidative stress. *Archives of medical research,* 38(5):503-511.

ZANG F.L., YE C.Z., LI G., DING W., ZHOU W., ZHU H., CHEN G., LUO T.H., GUANG M., LIU Y.P., ZHANG D., ZHENG S., YANG J., GU Y., XIE X.Y., LUO M. 2003. The rat model of type 2 diabetes mellitus and its glycometabolism characters. *Experimental animals,* 52:401-407.

ZIMMET P.Z. 1992. Kelly West lecture 1991: challenges in diabetes epidemiology from west to the rest. *Diabetes care,* 15:232-252.

ZIMMET P., ALBERTI K.G., SHAW J. 2001. Global and social implications of the diabetes epidemic. *Nature,* 414:782-787.



Chapter 3

Aloe ferox Leaf Gel Phytochemical Content, Antioxidant Capacity and Possible Health Benefits

Aloe ferox Leaf Gel Phytochemical Content, Antioxidant Capacity and Possible Health Benefits

Du Toit Loots[†*], Francois H. van der Westhuizen[‡], Lisa Botes[†].

[†]School for Physiology, Nutrition and Consumer Science, [‡]School for Biochemistry, North-West University, Private Bag X6001, Box 594, Potchefstroom, 2531, South Africa.

* To whom correspondence should be addressed. Tel: +27-18-299-2469. Fax: +27-18-299-2464. E-mail: dutoit.loots@nwu.ac.za.

Coauthors:

Francois H van der Westhuizen: E-mail: francois.vanderwesthuizen@nwu.ac.za

Lisa Botes: E-mail: 12167398@nwu.ac.za

ABSTRACT

In this study we identified, quantified and compared the phytochemical contents and antioxidant capacities of *Aloe ferox* lyophilized leaf gel (LGE) and 95% ethanol leaf gel extracts (ELGE) using GC-MS and spectrophotometric methods. Analytically, 95 % ethanol is less effective than ethylacetate-diethylether or hexane (in the case of fatty acids) extractions in separating phytochemicals for characterization purposes. However, although fewer compounds are extracted in the ELGE, they are approximately 345 times more concentrated as compared to the LGE, hence justifying ELGE use in biological efficacy studies *in vivo*. Individual phytochemicals identified included various phenolic acids/polyphenols, phytosterols, fatty acids, indoles, alkanes, pyrimidines, alkaloids, organic acids, aldehydes, dicarboxylic acids, ketones and alcohols. Due to the presence of the antioxidant polyphenols, indoles and alkaloids, the *Aloe ferox* leaf gel shows antioxidant capacity as confirmed by oxygen radical absorbance capacity (ORAC) and FRAP analyses. Both analytical methods used show the non-flavonoid polyphenols to contribute to the majority of the total polyphenol content. Due to its phytochemical composition, *Aloe ferox* leaf gel may show promise in alleviating symptoms associated with/or prevention of cardiovascular diseases, cancer, neurodegeneration, and diabetes.

Keywords: *Aloe ferox* leaf gel; phytochemical; polyphenols, antioxidant capacity; gas chromatography mass spectrometry, spectrophotometry, leaf gel extract, ethanol extract, ORAC, FRAP.

INTRODUCTION

The utilization of plants in various parts of the world is receiving more and more prominence, not only due to their health benefits, but also the opportunities they present to rural based economics. Mainly due to economic constraints, the populations of developing countries worldwide continue to rely heavily on the use of traditional medicine as their primary source of healthcare. Apart from *Aloe* being used extensively in the cosmetic industry, it has been described for centuries for its laxative, anti-inflammatory, immuno-stimulant, antiseptic *(1)*, wound and burn healing *(2)*, anti-ulcer *(3)*, anti-tumor *(4)* as well as for its anti-diabetic *(5)* activities. The majority of the scientifically based research on this topic was done on *Aloe vera* (or *Aloe barbadensis*) and *Aloe arborescens*. However, in the rural communities, the type of *Aloe* which is chosen as a traditional medicine would depend on its immediate availability to the specific community. Hence, various communities in different parts of the world would use the species of *Aloe* indigenous to their immediate surroundings. In South Africa for instance, various traditional communities and local industries are using a variety of location specific *Aloe* species, e.g. *Aloe ferox* in the Eastern and Western

Cape Provinces and *Aloe greatheadii* var *Davyana* in the northern regions of South Africa. These *Aloe* species are used in the treatment of arthritis, skin cancer, burns, eczema, psoriasis, digestive problems, blood pressure problems and diabetes. These treatments are based on anecdotal evidence or research findings done almost exclusively on *Aloe* vera. Different *Aloe* species would have varying phytochemical contents, health benefits and possible toxicities. Hence, it is of relevance for scientists, industry and rural communities to not only research the relevant medicinal uses of their indigenous *Aloe* species, but also to determine the active components and their individual or combined mechanisms of biological function. The use of 95% ethanol extracts of various *Aloe* species is extensively described in the literature for determining biological activity in the treatment and prevention of a variety of health conditions *(6, 7)*, particularly diabetes *(8-11)*. In this study we determined and compared the phytochemical contents and antioxidant capacities of *Aloe ferox* lyophilized leaf gel and 95 % ethanol leaf gel extracts using gas chromatography mass spectrometry (GCMS) and spectrophotometric methods of analysis. This was done not only to describe *Aloe ferox* leaf gel extracts with regards to phytochemical contents and possible health benefits, but to compare various extraction methods for both analytical efficacy and possible biological relevance.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Samples. Whole, freshly cut, *Aloe ferox* leaves (100kg) were kindly supplied by the Aloe Ferox Trust. These leaves were harvested in the month of September from farms in the Albertinia region in the Western Cape of South Africa. The inner leaf gel was removed, homogenized, freeze dried and stored at -20°C until analysis. This was termed the leaf gel extract (LGE) for the purpose of this study. Approximately half of the LGE was used for preparation of a 95% ethanol extract as described previously *(11)*. This was termed the 95% ethanol leaf gel extract (ELGE).

Materials. All analytical standards were purchased from Sigma-Aldrich (St Louis, MO, USA) and all the organic solvents used were of ultra high purity purchased from Burdick and Jackson (USA). Folin-Ciocalteu's phenol reagent and other reagent chemicals were purchased from Merck (Darmstadt, Germany).

Ethylacetate-Diethylether Extraction. The internal standard, 3-phenylbutyric acid (25mg/50ml) was added to 25mg of finely ground LGE and ELGE, followed by the addition of 1mL sodium acetate buffer (0.125 M). β-Glucuronidase (30μL) was added, the sample vortexed and incubated overnight at 37°C. The sample was extracted with 6mL ethylacetate followed by 3mL diethylether. The organic phase was collected after each extraction via centrifugation. The organic phase from each extraction was pooled and dried under nitrogen. The dried extract was derivatized with bis

(trimethylsilyl) trifloroacetamide (BSTFA) (100µL), trimethylchlorosilane (TMCS) (20µL) and pyridine (20µL) at 70°C for 30 min. After cooling, 0.1µL of the extract was injected into the GCMS via split-less injection.

Fatty Acid Extraction. Heptadecanoic acid (72mM), as an internal standard, was added to 25mg of LGE and ELGE followed by 100µL of a 45mM solution of butylated hydroxytoluene and 2ml methanolic HCL (3N). The samples were then vortexed and incubated for 4 hours at 90°C. After cooling to room temperature, the sample was extracted twice with 2ml of hexane, dried under a nitrogen stream and finally re-suspended with 100µL of hexane, 1µL of which was injected onto the GC-MS via split-less injection.

Gas Chromatography Mass Spectrometry. An Agilent 6890 GC ported to a 5973 Mass Selective detector (California, USA) was used for identification and quantification of individual fatty acids. For the acquisition of an electron ionization mass spectrum, an ion source temperature of 200°C and electron energy of 70 eV was used. The gas chromatograph was equipped with a SE-30 capillary column (Agilent, USA), a split/split-less injection piece (250°C) and direct GC-MS coupling (260°C). Helium (1ml/min) was used as the carrier gas. The oven temperature program for analyzing the ethylacetate-diethylether extract was with an initial oven temperature of 40°C and was maintained for 2min, followed by a steady climb to 350°C at a rate of 5 °C/min. For the fatty acid analysis, an initial oven temperature of 50°C

was maintained for 1.5 min and then allowed to increase to 190°C at a rate of 30°C/min. The oven temperature was maintained at 190°C for 5 min and then allowed to increase to 220°C at a rate of 8°C/min. The oven temperature was again maintained for 2 min and finally ramped to 230°C at a rate of 3°C/min and maintained for 24 min at this temperature.

Total Polyphenol Assay. The total polyphenol content of the extracts were determined according to the Folin-Ciocalteu procedure *(12)*. Briefly, 10mg of finely ground LGE or ELGE was dissolved in 200µL H_2O in a test tube followed by 1mL Folin-Ciocalteu's reagent. This was allowed to stand for 8 min at room temperature. Next, 0.8mL of sodium carbonate (7.5%, w/v) was added, mixed and allowed to stand for 30 min. Absorption was measured at 765nm (Shimadzu UV-1601 spectrophotometer). The mean total phenolic content (n = 3) was expressed as milligram gallic acid (Sigma-Alrich, St Louis, MO, USA) equivalents per 100g wet and dry mass (mg gallic acid equivalents (GAE)/100g) ± standard deviation.

Total Flavonoid Assay. The total flavonoid content was measured by using the $AlCl_3$ colorimetric assay *(13)* with some modifications. Briefly, 10mg of LGE or ELGE was dissolved in 1mL H_2O, to which 60µL of 5% (w/v) $NaNO_2$ was added. After 5 min, 60µL of a 10% (w/v) $AlCl_3$ was added. On the 6^{th} min, 400 µL 1M NaOH was added and the total volume was made up to 2mL with H_2O. The solution was mixed well and the absorbance measured at 510nm against a reagent blank. Concentrations were determined

157 using a catechin (Sigma-Alrich, St Louis, MO, USA) solution standard curve.
158 The mean total flavonoid content (n = 3) was expressed as milligrams
159 catechin equivalents (CE) per 100g wet and dry mass (mg CE/100g) ±
160 standard deviation.

161 **Oxygen Radical Absorbance Capacity (ORAC).** ORAC analyses of
162 hydrophilic and lipophylic compounds in LGE and ELGE were performed as
163 described previously *(14)*. The analysis of lipophylic compounds was aided
164 by the addition of randomly methylated β-cyclodextrin as a solubility
165 enhancer as described before *(15)*. Briefly, in a volume of 200µL, the
166 reaction contained 56nM fluorescein (Sigma-Alrich, St Louis, MO, USA) as
167 a target for free radical attack by 240nM 2,2'-azobis(2-amidino-propane)
168 dihydrochloride (Sigma-Alrich, St Louis, MO, USA). A BioTEK
169 fluorescence plate reader (FL-600, UK) was used and the decay of
170 fluorescence of fluorescein (excitation 485nm, emission 520nm) was
171 measured every 5 min for 2 hours at 37°C. Costar black opaque (96-well)
172 plates were used in the assays. Trolox (Sigma-Alrich, St Louis, MO, USA)
173 was used as standard at a range between 0-20µM with a polynomial (2^{nd}
174 order) curve fit analysis. Mean values (n = 3) of antioxidant capacities were
175 expressed as µmoles trolox equivalents (TE)/g wet and dry mass ± standard
176 deviation.

177 **Ferric Reducing Antioxidant Power (FRAP).** FRAP values were
178 determined essentially as described previously *(16)*. Briefly, the reduction of

a Fe^{3+}-2,3,5-triphenyltetrazolium (Sigma-Alrich, St Louis, MO, USA) complex in the assay by the antioxidants in the samples was monitored at 593nm. As a standard, $FeSO_4$ (Sigma-Alrich, St Louis, MO, USA) was used and the FRAP activities of the samples expressed as the mean (n = 3) μmol Fe^{2+}/g wet and dry mass ± standard deviation.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

The compounds identified and their quantities in the *Aloe ferox* LGE and ELGE are summarized in Table 1. Of all the compounds identified, the groups of compounds best described for their health benefits are the phenolic acids/polyphenols, sterols, fatty acids and indoles. Apart from these, various alkanes, pyrimidines, alkaloids, organic acids, aldehydes, dicarboxylic acids, ketones and alcohols were also identified. Although the extraction methods used in this study were not selected to target alcohols, a few of these where also identified. One would, however, expect a far larger variety of alcohols to occur in *Aloe* and in far higher concentrations. For better extraction of these, headspace isolation by simultaneous purging should be used as described previously *(17)*. However, by employing this method one would extract far less of the other biologically important health associated compounds. Therefore, to accomplish the aims of our study, alternative extraction procedures were used as described in the methods section, using ethylacetate-diethylether and hexane.

A general comparison of the phytochemical contents of the LGE and ELGE, calculated as per LGE dry mass, shows that, with the exception of a few compounds, far less compounds and at lower concentrations are extracted from 95% ethanol extracts than directly from the LGE using ethylacetate-diethylether or hexane. The occurrence of higher concentrations of a few compounds from the ELGE is most probably due to matrix protein conformation changes and precipitation by the ethanol, hence making extraction of these protein associated compounds easier *(18)*. However, when quantifying the concentrations for the individual compounds occurring in the ELGE as per dry mass ELGE, the concentrations for the compounds extracted are approximately 345 times higher than that for the same compound occurring in the lyophilized LGE. Similarly, higher concentrations of total polyphenols, total flavonoids and total non-flavonoids, as well as higher antioxidant capacities using ORAC and FRAP analyses (Table 2) are seen in the ELGE extracts. Additionally, these values are again far less when quantified as per LGE dry mass. This indicates that from an analytical perspective, 95% ethanol is in general less effective than direct ethylacetate-diethylether or hexane extractions (in the case of fatty acids) for the phytochemical characterization of *Aloes*. However, the results also indicate the ELGE allows for effective concentration of a number of biologically active ingredients from LGE, confirming its popularity for use for testing biological activity for certain components *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Additionally, polyphenols are generally classified into flavonoids and non-

flavonoids *(19)*. In Table 1, GCMS analyses indicate the majority of the polyphenol compounds identified in the *Aloe ferox* leaf gel belongs to the non-flavonoid group of polyphenols. This was confirmed by the spectrophotometic analysis of polyphenols summarized in Table 2, indicating the non-flavonoid components to contribute to 93% of the total polyphenols in the LGE and 92% in the ELGE.

Over the past 10 years there has been a growing interest in the value of polyphenols among researchers and food manufacturers. This is mainly because of their antioxidant properties, their abundance in the diet and their role in the prevention of various diseases associated with oxidative stress such as cancer, cardiovascular disease, neurodegeneration *(20)* and diabetes *(21)*. Polyphenols constitute a large class of molecules containing a number of phenolic hydroxyl groups attached to ring structures allowing for their antioxidant activities. These compounds are multifunctional and can act as reducing agents, hydrogen donating antioxidants, and singlet oxygen quenchers *(19)*. All of the individual *Aloe ferox* leaf gel antioxidant polyphenols identified in Table 1 may contribute to the prevention of the above-mentioned diseases to a greater or lesser extent. The individual contributions of these to disease prevention would, however, depend on their concentrations, antioxidant capacities, bioavailablities and specific mechanisms of action. Although the individual phenolic acids/polyphenols occurring in the highest concentrations where benzoic acid, *p*-toluic acid, *p*-coumaric acid, *p*-salicylic acid, protocatechuic acid, hydroxyphenylacetic

247 acid, ferulic acid, aloe emodin and vanillic acid, it is well known that the
248 protective health benefits of polyphenols are mainly through a combination
249 of additive and/or synergistic effects between the individual compounds *(22)*.
250 Consequently, those polyphenol/phenolic compounds identified in lower
251 concentrations may also be of value.

252 Due to the fact that the majority of the phenolic acids/polyphenols
253 identified in *Aloe ferox* leaf gel in Table 1 are antioxidants *(19)* and these
254 compounds as a group occur in the highest concentrations, one would expect
255 these to contribute to the majority of the antioxidant capacity measured in
256 these extracts (Table 2). However, apart from these polyphenols, the indoles
257 *(23)* and alkaloids identified *(24)* are also known to possess antioxidant
258 activities and may consequently also contribute to the ORAC and FRAP
259 values of these extracts. When interpreting data of this nature, one should
260 keep in mind that using the concentrations of these antioxidant compounds
261 alone is insufficient criteria for making predictions of individual
262 contributions to oxidative stress. As previously described, this is due to the
263 fact that the concentrations of individual polyphenol antioxidants are not the
264 only factor influencing antioxidant capacity, but the structural arrangements
265 (number and position of hydroxyl groups, double bonds and aromatic rings)
266 of these compounds also play a role *(19)*. Additionally, their individual
267 contributions to ORAC and FRAP may also differ. Due to the FRAP analysis
268 being an indication of the ferric ion reducing power of a compound or
269 mixture, and the ORAC analysis indicating the ability of a compound or

mixture to scavenge free radicals, the various individual polyphenol components of the mixture may have stronger free radical scavenging abilities than reducing power, or *visa versa,* dependent on their chemical structures *(25)*.

Phytosterols are another group of compounds well known for their health benefits. Of the four phytosterols identified in Table 1, β-sitosterol occurred in by far the highest concentrations in the LGE, contributing to 93% of the total phytosterols identified. The ELGE was once again less effective in extracting these compounds and only cholestanol was identified. However, the levels normalized to dry mass ELGE were not insignificant. Phytosterols are best described for their total cholesterol and low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C) lowering effects, consequently associated with reducing the risk for cardiovascular disease *(26)*. As summarized by Devaraj and Jialal (2006), evidence for this has been observed in hypercholesterolemic, diabetic and healthy volunteers. The mechanism proposed by which phytosterols accomplish this is by lowering cholesterol absorption due to the structural similarities these compounds share with cholesterol *(27-29)*. Apart from lowering cardiovascular risk factors associated with diabetes, phytosterols (β-sitosterol in particular) have been shown to affect diabetes positively by directly lowering fasting blood glucose levels by cortisol inhibition *(30)*. Additionally, phytosterols have been shown to reduce biomarkers for oxidative stress and inflammation *(31)*, as well as to reduce cancer development by enabling anti-tumor responses by increasing immune

293 recognition of cancer, influencing hormonal dependent growth of endocrine
294 tumors and altering sterol biosynthesis due to the structural similarities of the
295 phytosterols with these compounds and their substrates *(32)*. Phytosterols
296 have also been shown to directly inhibit tumor growth by slowing cell cycle
297 progression, induction of apoptosis and by the inhibition of tumor metastasis
298 *(32)*.

299 Long chain poly-unsaturated fatty acids (PUFA's) also have important
300 biological functions noted to modulate risks of chronic degenerative and
301 inflammatory diseases, of which the essential PUFA's, linolenic (C18:3 n-3)
302 and linoleic (C18:2 n-6) acids are best described *(33, 34)*. Both these were
303 present in the *Aloe ferox* leaf gel extracts with linoleic acid being the major
304 fatty acid present. However, despite this, the concentrations of these are still
305 very low in comparison to the other compounds identified with possible
306 health benefits and were not even detectable in the lipophylic ORAC
307 analysis. These fatty acids may probably be too low for the *Aloe ferox* leaf
308 gel to contribute to health through its fatty acid composition.

309

310 **CONCLUSIONS**

311 In conclusion, the results of this study show that from an analytical
312 perspective, 95% ethanol is a less efficient solvent for the extraction of the
313 phytochemical components of *Aloe ferox* leaf gel for descriptive purposes as

compared to ethylacetate-diethylether or hexane (in the case of fatty acids). Although the 95% ethanol extracts contain a smaller variety of extracted compounds, their concentrations are, however, approximately 345 times higher than that of the lyophilized *Aloe ferox* leaf gel when quantified as dry mass ELGE extract. This justifies the popularity of the ELGE for applications testing biological efficacy *in vivo* and *in vitro*. For the purpose of determining possible biological application, *Aloe ferox* leaf gel was characterized. Various phenolic acids/polyphenols, phytosterols, fatty acids, indoles, alkanes, pyrimidines, alkaloids, organic acids, aldehydes, dicarboxylic acids, ketones and alcohols were identified and quantified. Due to the presence of the antioxidant polyphenols, indoles and alkaloids, the *Aloe ferox* leaf gel shows antioxidant capacity as confirmed by ORAC and FRAP analyses. Both GC-MS and spectrophotometric analyses show the non-flavonoid polyphenols to contribute to the majority of the total polyphenol content. Due to the occurrence of the polyphenols, phytosterols and perhaps the indoles present, *Aloe ferox* leaf gel may show promise in alleviating or preventing the symptoms associated with cardiovascular diseases, cancer, neurodegeneration, and diabetes. This may be due to the well-documented lowering effects of these compounds on total cholesterol, LDL-C and fasting blood glucose. These results support the current use of *Aloe ferox* by both industry and traditional healers for the treatment of the above-mentioned diseases. However, further clinical trials regarding these claims are

336 necessary before accurate conclusions regarding these heath benefits can be
337 made

338

339 **ABREVIATIONS**

340 LGE, leaf gel extract; ELGE, ethanol leaf gel extract; GC-MS, gas
341 chromatography coupled mass spectrometry; ORAC, oxygen radical
342 absorbance capacity; FRAP, ferric reducing antioxidant power; LDL-C, low-
343 density lipoprotein cholesterol; BSTFA, bis (trimethylsilyl) trifloroacetamide;
344 TMCS, trimethylchlorosilane; GAE, gallic acid equivalent; CE catechin
345 equivalent; TE, trolox equivalent

346

347 **ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

348 Special thanks to the Aloe Ferox Foundation in Albertinia, South Africa, for
349 supplying the sample material for this study.

LITERATURE CITED

1. Okyar, A.; Can, A.; Akev, N.; Baktir, G.; Sutlupinar, N. Effect of Aloe vera leaves on blood glucose level in type I and type II diabetic rat models. *Phytother. Res.* **2001**, *15*, 157-161.

2. Chithra, P.; Sajithlal, G. B.; Chandrakasan, G. Influence of aloe vera on the healing of dermal wounds in diabetic rats. *J. Ethnopharmacol.* **1998**, *59*, 195-201.

3. Koo, M. W. L. Aloe vera: antiulcer and antidiabetic effects. *Phytother. Res.* **1994**, *8*, 461-464.

4. Saito, H. Purification of active substances of Aloe arborescens Miller and their biological and pharmacological activity. *Phytother. Res.* **1993**, *7*, S14-S19.

5. Bunyapraphatsara, N.; Yongchaiyudha, S.; Rungpitarangsi, V.; Chokechaijaroenporn, O. Antidiabetic activity of Aloe vera L. juice. II. Clinical trials in diabetes mellitus patients in combination with glibenclamide. *Phytomedicine.* **1996**, *3*, 245-248.

6. Reynolds, T.; Dweck, A. C. Aloe vera leaf gel: a review update. *J. Ethnopharmacol.* **1999**, *68*, 3-37.

7. Choi, S.; Chung, M. H. A review on the relationship between Aloe vera components and their biologic effecs. *Seminars in Integrative Medicine.* **2003**, *1*, 53-62.

8. al-Shamaony, L.; al-Khazraji, S. M.; Twaij, H. A. Hypoglycaemic effect of Artemisia herba alba. II. Effect of a valuable extract on some blood parameters in diabetic animals. *J. Ethnopharmacol.* **1994**, *43*, 167-171.

9. Rajasekaran, S.; Sivagnanam, K.; Subramanian, S. Antioxidant effect of Aloe vera gel extract in streptozotocin-induced diabetes in rats. *Pharmacol. Rep.* **2005**, *57*, 90-96.

10. Rajasekaran, S.; Sivagnanam, K.; Subramanian, S. Modulatory effects of Aloe vera leaf gel extract on oxidative stress in rats treated with streptozotocin. *J. Pharm. Pharmacol.* **2005**, *57*, 241-246.

11. Rajasekaran, S.; Ravi, K.; Sivagnanam, K.; Subramanian, S. Beneficial effects of aloe vera leaf gel extract on lipid profile status in rats with streptozotocin diabetes. *Clin. Exp. Pharmacol. Physiol.* **2006**, *33*, 232-237.

12. Singleton, V. L.; Rossi, J. A. Colorimetry of total phenolics with phospomolybdic – phosphotungstic acid reagents. *Am. J. Enol. Vitic.* **1965**, *16*, 144-158.

13. Marinova, D.; Robarova, F.; Atanassova, M. Total phenolics and total flavonoids in bulgarian fruits and vegetables. *J. Univ. Chem. Tech. Metal.* **2005**, *40*, 255-260.

14. Prior, R. L.; Hoang, H.; Gu, L.; Wu, X.; Bacchiocca, M.; Howard, L.; Hampsch-Woodill, M.; Huang, D.; Ou, B.; Jacob, R. Assays for hydrophilic and lipophilic antioxidant capacity (oxygen radical absorbance capacity (ORAC(FL))) of plasma and other biological and food samples. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2003**, *51*, 3273-3279.

15. Huang, D.; Ou, B.; Hampsch-Woodill, M.; Flanagan, J. A.; Deemer, E. K. Development and validation of oxygen radical absorbance capacity assay for lipophilic antioxidants using randomly methylated beta-cyclodextrin as the solubility enhancer. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2002**, 1815-1821.

16. Benzie, I. F.; Strain, J. J. Ferric reducing/antioxidant power assay: direct measure of total antioxidant activity of biological fluids and modified version for simultaneous measurement of total antioxidant power and ascorbic acid concentration. *Methods Enzymol.* **1999**, *299*, 15-27.

17. Umano, K.; Nakahara, K.; Shoji, A.; Shibamoto, T. Aroma chemicals isolated and identified from leaves of Aloe arborescens Mill. Var. Natalensis.Berger. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **1999**, *47*, 3702-3705.

18. Boutagy, J.; Harvey, D. J. Determination of cytosine arabinoside in human plasma by gas chromatography with a nitrogen-sensitive detector and by gas chromatography--mass spectrometry. *J. Chromatogr.* **1978**, *146*, 283-296.

19. Rice-Evans, C. Flavonoids and isoflavones: absorption, metabolism, and bioactivity. *Free Radic. Biol. Med.* **2004**, *36*, 827-828.

20. Scalbert, A.; Williamson, G. Dietary intake and bioavailability of polyphenols. *J. Nutr.* **2000**, *130*, 2073S-2085S.

21. Vogler, B. K.; Ernst, E. Aloe vera: a systematic review of its clinical effectiveness. *Br. J. Gen. Pract.* **1999**, *49*, 823-828.

22. Liu R.H. Supplement quick fix fails to deliver. *Food Technol. Int.* **2002**, *1*, 71-72.

23. Herraiz, T.; Galisteo, J. Endogenous and dietary indoles: a class of antioxidants and radical scavengers in the ABTS assay. *Free Radic. Res.* **2004**, *38*, 323-331.

24. Azam, S.; Hadi, N.; Khan, N. U.; Hadi, S. M. Antioxidant and prooxidant properties of caffeine, theobromine and xanthine. *Med. Sci. Monit.* **2003**, *9*, BR325-BR330.

25. Loots, D. T.; van der Westhuizen, F. H.; Jerling, J. Polyphenol composition and antioxidant activity of Kei-apple (Dovyalis caffra) juice. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2006**, *54*, 1271-1276.

26. Patch, C. S.; Tapsell, L. C.; Williams, P. G.; Gordon, M. Plant sterols as dietary adjuvants in the reduction of cardiovascular risk: theory and evidence. *Vasc. Health Risk Manag.* **2006**, *2*, 157-162.

27. Lichtenstein, A. H.; Deckelbaum, R. J. AHA Science Advisory. Stanol/sterol ester-containing foods and blood cholesterol levels. A statement for healthcare professionals from the Nutrition Committee of the Council on Nutrition, Physical Activity, and Metabolism of the American Heart Association. *Circulation.* **2001**, *103*, 1177-1179.

28. Normen, L.; Dutta, P.; Lia, A.; Andersson, H. Soy sterol esters and beta-sitostanol ester as inhibitors of cholesterol absorption in human small bowel. *Am. J. Clin. Nutr.* **2000**, *71*, 908-913.

29. Jones, P. J.; Ntanios, F. Y.; Raeini-Sarjaz, M.; Vanstone, C. A. Cholesterol-lowering efficacy of a sitostanol-containing phytosterol mixture with a prudent diet in hyperlipidemic men. *Am. J. Clin. Nutr.* **1999**, *69*, 1144-1150.

30. McAnuff, M. A.; Harding, W. W.; Omoruyi, F. O.; Jacobs, H.; Morrison, E. Y.; Asemota, H. N. Hypoglycemic effects of steroidal sapogenins isolated from Jamaican bitter yam, Dioscorea polygonoides. *Food Chem. Toxicol.* **2005**, *43*, 1667-1672.

31. Devaraj, S.; Jialal, I. The role of dietary supplementation with plant sterols and stanols in the prevention of cardiovascular disease. *Nutr. Rev.* **2006**, *64*, 348-354.

32. Bradford, P. G.; Awad, A. B. Phytosterols as anticancer compounds. *Mol. Nutr. Food Res.* **2007**, *51*, 161-170.

33. Simopoulos, A. P. Evolutionary aspects of diet, the omega-6/omega-3 ratio and genetic variation: nutritional implications for chronic diseases. *Biomed. Pharmacother.* **2006**, *60*, 502-507.

34. Mutch, D. M.; Wahli, W.; Williamson, G. Nutrigenomics and nutrigenetics: the emerging faces of nutrition. *FASEB J.* **2005**, *19*, 1602-1616.

Table 1. Concentrations (particles per million) of GCMS identified compounds from lyophilized *Aloe ferox* leaf gel (LGE) and 95% ethanol leaf gel extract (ELGE).

Compound	Concentration (ppm)			Compound	Concentration (ppm)		
	LGE (per dry mass LGE)	ELGE (per dry mass LGE	ELGE (per dry mass ELGE)		LGE (per dry mass LGE)	ELGE (per dry mass LGE	ELGE (per dry mass ELGE)
	Phenolic acids / Polyphenols				Organic acids		
Phenol	15.37	38.87	1.3×10^4	Isovaleric	150.4	151.34	5.2×10^4
Gentisic	1.99	-	-	Lactic	149.84	204.92	7.1×10^4
Vanillic	60.27	24.57	8.5×10^3	Glycolic	92.40	-	-
Homovanillic	19.66	14.36	5.0×10^3	Pyruvic	-	88.86	3.1×10^4
o-Hydroxycinnamic	56.21	-	-	Furoic	59.23	-	-
Protocatechuic	169.42	45.56	1.6×10^4	3-Hydroxypropionic	1.36	-	-
3,4-Dihydroxyphenylacetic	8.54	-	-	2-Hydroxyvaleric	24.13	80.52	2.8×10^4
5-Methoxyprotocatechuic	2.94	-	-	Cyclohexanone-3-carboxylic	1.55	-	-
Syringic	26.59	-	-	3-Hydroxyisovaleric	41.53	225.97	7.8×10^4
Sinapic	35.94	-	-	3-Methyl-1,3-hydroxybutanoic	21.59	-	-
p-Coumaric	453.38	-	-	Methylbenzyl acetic	-	16.52	5.7×10^3
Caffeic	13.84	-	-	2-Hydroxycaproic	6.78	-	-
Isoferulic	53.12	-	-	Phosphoric	-	342.11	1.2×10^5
Ferulic	89.76	4.43	1.5×10^3	Methylcrotonic	-	7.3	2.5×10^3
4-Methoxycinnamic	2.18	-	-	2-Ketoisovaleric	0.63	58.62	2.1×10^4
Aloe emodin	87.79	-	-	3-Methylglutyric	-	1005.90	3.5×10^5
4-Phenyllactic	11.83	-	-	Succinic	385.10	118.77	4.1×10^4
4-Ethylphenol	10.15	33.25	1.2×10^4	2-Methylsuccinic	63.94	-	-
p-Toluic	841.63	-	-	Picolinic	-	280.80	9.7×10^4
Hydrocinnamic	37.68	-	-	Methylmalic	22.14	-	-
p-Salicylic	189.54	51.74	1.8×10^4	Malic	47.52	-	-
Benzoic	880.36	5506.5	1.9×10^6	3,4,5-Trihydroxypentanoic	20.10	5.79	2.0×10^3
Phenylpyruvic	-	6.56	2.3×10^5	D-Ribonic	7.09	-	-
Mandelic	9.83	84.37	2.9×10^4	2-Hydroxyglutyric	-	20.21	7.0×10^3
Phenylpropionic	-	26.55	9.2×10^3	3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutyric	-	20.66	7.2×10^3
m-Hydroxymandelic	-	141.93	4.9×10^4	2-Ketoglutyric	-	17.25	6.0×10^3
Phenylpyruvic	-	6.58	2.3×10^3	Tartaric	-	18.82	6.3×10^3
Hydroxyphenylacetic	113.56	45.34	1.6×10^4	Suberic	12.19	-	-

Pyrocatechuic	4.67	-	-
Hydro-p-coumaric	15.63	-	-
6,7 Hydroxycoumarin	38.40	-	-
Alkane			
1,3-dihydroxybutane	10.48	10.77	3.7×10^3
Hexacosane	-	6.11	2.1×10^3
Pyrimidines			
Uracil	697.65	-	
Thymine	429.33	181.65	6.3×10^4
Indoles			
Indole-5-acetic acid	11.61	-	-
Indole-3-acetic acid	2.88	-	-
Hexahydrobenzoindole	-	20.59	7.1×10^3
5-Indole carboxylic acid	-	12.09	4.2×10^3
Alkaloids			
Hypoxanthine	28.41	-	-
Xanthine	1333.2	-	-
Sterols			
Cholestanol	24.82	13.42	4.6×10^3
Campestrol	13.73	-	-
β-Sitosterol	1602.7	-	-
Stigmasterol	69.34	-	-
Alcohols			
2-Butanol	13.97	-	-
1-Propanol	161.16	196.66	6.8×10^4
2,3-Butanediol	339.28	-	-
2-Methyl-1,3-propanediol	355.58	39.14	1.4×10^4
Benzylalcohol	163.43	305.66	1.1×10^5
2,3-Pentanediol	8.82	-	-
Glycerol	342.75	-	-
Octadecanol	3.76	-	-
Phenylethanol	87.31	-	-
Aldehydes			
Benzaldehyde	57.46	73.57	2.5×10^4
m-Tolualdehyde	18.46	-	
3-Hydroxypicolinic	61.82	-	-
Isonicotinic	40.68	-	-
Hydantoinpropionic	-	15.15	5.2×10^3
2-Hydroxybutyric	-	2.40	829.92
3-hydroxybutyric	-	71.65	2.5×10^4
Fatty acids			
Lauric (12:0)	0.33	-	-
Myristic (C14:0)	0.75	-	-
Pentadecenoic (C15:0)	1.14	1.71	5.91.32
Palmitoleic (C16:1)	1.35	0.19	65.70
Palmitic (C16:0)	45.55	0.20	69.16
Stearic (C18:0)	3.56	0.83	287.01
Linoleic (C18:2 n-6)	104.06	0.42	145.24
Oleic (C18:1)	0.17	-	-
Linolenic (c18:3 n-3)	1.53	-	-
Erucic (C22:1 n-9)	0.90	-	-
Nonadecenoic (19:0)	0.14	-	-
Arachidic (C20:1)	0.73	-	-
Heneicosanoic acid (21:0)	0.50	-	-
Behenic (C22:0)	2.89	-	-
Tricosanoic (C23:0)	3.08	-	-
Lignoceric (C24:0)	9.03	-	-
Pentacosanoic (C25:0)	2.87	-	-
Dicarboxylic acids			
Azelaic	0.03	-	-
Undecanedioic	0.04	-	-
2-Hydroxyadipic	-	6.72	2.3×10^3
Ketones			
4,6-dimethyl-2-heptanone	40.91	-	-
Acetophenone	8.06	-	-
2,4-Dimethyl-4-heptanone	129.50	-	-
Heptanone	-	177.40	-

Table 2. Concentrations of total polyphenols (mg GAE/100g ± stdev), flavonoids (mg CE/100g ± stdev) and non-flavonoids (by calculation) as well as antioxidant capacity via oxygen radical absorbance capacity (ORAC, μmol TE/g) and ferric reducing antioxidant power (FRAP, μmol/g) analyses in lyophilized *Aloe ferox* leaf gel (LGE) and 95% ethanol leaf gel extracts (ELGE).

Compounds	LGE (dry mass)	LGE (wet mass)	ELGE (expressed as dry mass ELGE)	ELGE (expressed as dry mass LGE)	ELGE (expressed as wet mass LGE)
Total polyphenols	79.2 ± 4.03	2.74 ± 0.14	413 ± 9.89	26.8 ± 0.64	0.94 ± 0.02
Total flavonoids	5.5 ± 0.38	0.19 ± 0.01	33.6 ± 1.99	2.18 ± 0.13	0.08 ± 0.004
Total non-flavonoids	73.7 ± 0.45	2.55 ± 0.23	379 ± 6.78	24.6 ± 1.5	0.87 ± 0.02
ORAC – hydrophilic	53 ± 1.2	1.83 ± 0.04	136 ± 2.5	8.83 ± 0.16	0.31 ± 0.006
ORAC - lipophyllic	ND	ND	ND	ND	ND
ORAC - Total	53 ± 1.2	1.83 ± 0.04	136 ± 2.5	8.83 ± 0.16	0.31 ± 0.006
FRAP	4.9 ± 0.25	0.17 ± 0.08	19.0 ± 0.3	1.23 ± 0.02	0.05 ± 0.001

ND, not detected

Chapter 4

Phytochemical Contents and Antioxidant Capacities of Two *Aloe greatheadii var. davyana* Extracts

Molecules **2008**, *13*, 1-x manuscripts; DOI: 10.3390/moleculesxxxxxxxxx

OPEN ACCESS

molecules

ISSN 1420-3049

www.mdpi.org/molecules

Article

Phytochemical Contents and Antioxidant Capacities of Two *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* Extracts

Lisa Botes [1], Francois H. van der Westhuizen [2] and Du Toit Loots [1,2,*]

[1] School for Physiology, Nutrition and Consumer Science, Private Bag X6001, Box 594, Potchefstroom, 2531, South Africa; E-mail: 12167398@nwu.ac.za (Lisa Botes)

[2] School for Physical and Chemical Sciences, North-West University, Private Bag X6001, Box 269, Potchefstroom, 2531, South Africa; E-mails: francois.vanderwesthuizen@nwu.ac.za (Francois H. van der Westhuizen)

* Author to whom correspondence should be addressed; E-mail: dutoit.loots@nwu.ac.za; Tel.: +27182991818; Fax: +27182991818.

Received: 10 June 2008; in revised form: 22 August 2008 / Accepted: 23 August 2008 / Published: xx

---

Abstract: *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* (Asphodelaceae) is used among rural South African communities to treat arthritis, skin cancer, burns, eczema, psoriasis, digestive problems, high blood pressure and diabetes, despite very little supporting scientific evidence. Due to increased interest by both the scientific community and industry regarding the medicinal uses of this plant species, we identified, quantified and compared the phytochemical contents and antioxidant capacities of two extracts of *A. greatheadii;* a leaf

gel extract (LGE) and a 95% aqueous ethanol leaf gel extract (ELGE), using various modified extraction procedures, GC-MS and spectrophotometry. Apart from extensively characterizing this medicinal plant with regards to its organic acid, polyphenols/phenolic acid, alcohol, aldehyde, ketone, alkane, pyrimidine, indole, alkaloid, phytosterol, fatty acid and dicarboxylic acid contents and antioxidant capacities, we describe a modified extraction procedure for the purpose of general phytochemical characterization, and compare this to a 95% aqueous ethanol extraction technique. From the results it is clear that *A. greatheadii* contains a variety of compounds with confirmed antioxidant capacity and other putative health benefits (such as blood glucose, cholesterol and cortisol lowering properties) relating to the prevention or treatment of diabetes, cardiovascular disease, cancer and hypertension. The results also indicate that separate ethyl acetate/diethyl ether and hexane extractions of the LGE, better serve for general phytochemical characterization purposes, and 95% aqueous ethanol extraction for concentrating selective groups of health related compounds, hence justifying its use for biological *in vivo* efficacy studies.

Keywords: Phytochemical content; antioxidant capacity; polyphenols; phytosterols.

Introduction

Populations in developing countries worldwide rely heavily on the use of traditional medicine as their primary source of healthcare [1]. In South Africa alone over 27 million people use indigenous plant based medicines and up to 60% of the population consult with one of 200 000 traditional healers [2]. Additionally, there is an increased global commercial interest in the use of these plant species for their proposed health benefits despite little or no scientific evidence justifying the anecdotal claims accompanying many of these products.

Aloes have been used therapeutically since ancient times [3, 4] and interest in the inner, colourless leaf gel has increased over the last two decades [5]. Partial characterization and biological action of various extracts of the leaf gel have been described, especially pertaining to diabetes [6]. The majority of the scientifically based research on this topic has to date, however, been done

exclusively on two *Aloe* species namely; *Aloe vera* (or *Aloe barbadensis*) and *Aloe arborescens*. *Aloe* gel (from a variety of *Aloe* species) is sold commercially worldwide as an ingredient of a wide range of health care, cosmetic and therapeutic products [6]. This commercial activity, and widely distributed use of *Aloe* as used in traditional medicine, has led to an upsurge of both clinical and chemical research focusing on the active ingredients in these plants, as well as their biological activities.

The species of *Aloe* selected for commercial exploitation or selected by the traditional healer, would be based on its local availability and distribution. In South Africa the most widely distributed *Aloe* species are *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* (Asphodelaceae) and *Aloe ferox* Mill. (Asphodelaceae). *A. greatheadii* grows wild in the northern parts of South Africa, whereas *A. ferox* grows wild primarily in the Eastern and Western Cape Provinces. Various extracts of these *Aloe* species are traditionally used and commercially sold as creams, ointments and tonics for the purpose of treating a variety of ailments, of which their applications to arthritis, skin cancer, burns, eczema, psoriasis, digestive problems, high blood pressure and diabetes are most common. There is, however, very little or no scientific evidence to support these claims, with many of the claims being based on research done on *A. vera*. As different *Aloe* species would have varying phytochemical contents due to inter-species variation, and varying climate and soil conditions, direct correlation of biological activity would be inaccurate. Consequently, it is of relevance for scientists, industry and rural communities to not only research the relevant medicinal uses of these indigenous *Aloe* species, but also to determine the active components and their individual or combined mechanisms of biological function.

This paper will primarily focus on identifying, quantifying and comparing the phytochemical composition of two *A. greatheadii* var. *davyana* extracts: a leaf gel extract (LGE) and a 95% aqueous ethanol leaf gel extract (ELGE), obtained using a modified extraction procedure, and analysis on GC-MS and spectrophotometry. This is done in order to determine whether this plant species contains any individual compound or group of compounds which may substantiate its current commercial and traditionally use as a herbal medicine, in addition to determining the most appropriate methods of extracting these compounds. The results will consequently be discussed in the light of their putative biological or therapeutic relevance.

Results and Discussion

The individual compounds identified via GC-MS in the LGE and ELGE of *A. greatheadii* var. *davyana* are arranged according to their structural classifications and summarized in Table 1. Of the individual compounds identified, those best described for their health benefits include the polyphenols/phenolic acids, sterols, fatty acids and indoles. Other compounds identified include various alkanes, pyrimidines, alkaloids, organic acids, aldehydes, dicarboxylic acids, ketones and alcohols.

Table 1. Concentrations of GC-MS Identified Compounds from Lyophilized *Aloe greatheadii* var *davyana* Leaf Gel (LGE) And 95% Aqueous Ethanol Leaf Gel Extracts (ELGE).

Compounds	Concentration (ppm)			Compounds	Concentration (ppm)		
	LGE	ELGE (per dry mass LGE)	ELGE (per dry mass ELGE)		LGE	ELGE (per dry mass LGE)	ELGE (per dry mass ELGE)
Organic acids				**Alcohols**			
Isovaleric	119	71.7	2.60×10^3	1-Propanol	83.9	-	-
Pentanoic	491	40.0	$1.5\,0x\,10^3$	2,3-Butanol	262	-	-
Lactic	2786	111	4.10×10^3	2-Methyl-1,3-propanediol	293	-	-
2-Hydroxyacetic	68.5	-	-	Phenylethanol	51.5	-	-
Pyruvic	23.1	2.56	-	Benzyl alcohol	56.3	133	4.90×10^3
Furancarboxylic	30.3	-	-	2,3-Pentanediol	7.46	-	-
Oxalic	0.88	-	-	Glycerol	1.20	-	-
3-Hydroxypropanoic	0.99	-	-	Octadecanol	11.9	-	-
2-Hydroxyvaleric	83.6	43.7	1.60×10^3	Phytol	20.1	-	-
Cyclohexane-3-carboxylic	0.87	-	-	2-Methyl-1,3-butanol	-	20.6	7.60×10^2
3-Hydroxyisovaleric	110	-	-	Hexanol	23.3	-	-
2-Ketoisovaleric	1.20	39.9	1.50×10^3	Butanol	6.45	-	-
Succinic	415	989	3.70×10^4				

2-Methylsuccinic	61.8	75.1	2.80×10^3	**Aldehydes**			
Methylmalic	10.4	-	-	Benzaldehyde	35.3	156	5.80×10^3
Malic	25.4	126	4.70×10^3	*m*-Tolualdehyde	11.7	-	-
Threonic	1.43	-	-	*p*-Tolualdehyde	-	45.9	1.70×10^3
3,4,5-Trihydroxypentanoic	2.05	-	-	2,3-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde	0.24	-	-
2,3,4,5-Tetrahydroxypentanoic	-	27.9	1.00×10^3	Glyceraldehyde	32.2	-	-
Suberic	6.37	-	-				
3-Hydroxypicolinic	34.9	-	-	**Ketones**			
Isonicotinic	27.6	-	-	2,6-Dimethyl-4-heptanone	153	-	-
2-Ketoglutaric	-	25.5	9.40×10^2	4,6-Dimethyl-2-heptanone	34.5	-	-
Glycolic	-	132	4.90×10^3	Heptanone	-	8.51	3.4×10^2
3-Hydroxypropionic	-	2.31	8.50×10^1				
Methylbenzyl acetate	-	16.7	6.20×10^2	**Pyrimidines**			
Acetic	-	29.2	1.10×10^3	Uracil	554	919	3.40×10^4
Phosphoric	-	233	8.60×10^3	Thymine	428	187	6.90×10^3
Hydantoinpropionic	-	17.5	6.50×10^2				
2-Butoxyethylacetate	-	57.6	2.10×10^3	**Indoles**			
Citric	-	5.94	2.20×10^2	Indole-5-acetic	9.19	-	-
2-Hydroxyglutaric	-	24.8	9.20×10^2	Hexahydrobenzoindole	-	11.4	4.20×10^2
Tartaric	-	9.69	3.60×10^2				
3-Methylvaleric	-	58.6	2.20×10^3	**Alkaloids**			
				Hypoxanthine	33.1	-	-
Polyphenols / Phenolic compounds							
Phenol	11.8	46.0	1.70×10^3	**Phytosterols**			
4-Ethylphenol	5.85	-	-	Cholestanol	17.7	-	-

Vanillic	60.7	25.7	9.50×10^2	Campesterol	119	-	-
Homovanillic	23.4	-	-	β-sitosterol	99.6	-	-
Gentisic	55.6	-	-	Stigmasterol	15.8	-	-
6,7-Dihydroxycoumaric	31.3	-	-				
o-Hydroxycinnamic	51.3	-	-	**Fatty acids**			
Protocatechuic	162	42.7	1.60×10^3	Lauric (C12:0)	0.35	-	-
3,4-Dihydroxyphenylacetic	2.76	-	-	Tridecanoic (C13:0)	0.02	-	-
Syringic	14.4	-	-	Sebacic (C10:0)	0.01	-	-
Sinapic	37.8	-	-	Myristic (C14:0)	2.86	-	-
Caffeic	107	-	-	Undecanoic (C11:0)	0.03	-	-
Isoferulic	38.4	-	-	Pentadecanoic (15:0)	1.16	-	-
Ferulic	60.1	-	-	Palmitic (C16:0)	43.0	1.49	5.50×10^1
Benzoic	420	3136	1.20×10^5	Stearic (C18:0)	3.24	-	-
Phenylacetic	71.3	283	1.00×10^4	Nonadecanoic (C19:0)	3.14	-	-
2-Methoxybenzoic	233	-	-	Heneicosanoic (C21:0)	0.28	-	-
o-Toluic	162	-	-	Behenic (C22:0)	5.39	-	-
Phenylpropionic	37.5	20.3	7.50×10^2	Tricosanoic (C23:0)	1.74	-	-
4-Phenyllactic	613	86.8	3.20×10^3	Lignoceric (C24:0)	5.11	-	-
4-Hydroxybenzoic	223	56.1	2.10×10^3	Arachidonic (C20:4)	0.57	-	-
2,3-Hydroxybenzoic	12.1	-	-	Myristoleic (C14:1)	0.20	-	-
4-Hydroxyphenylacetic	378	45.7	1.70×10^3	10-Pentadecenoic (C15:1)	1.44	-	-
Hydro-*p*-	13.9	-	-	Palmitoleic	4.00	-	-

coumaric				(C16:1)			
p-Coumaric	113	-	-	Linoleic (C18:2 n-6)	570	-	-
3-Hydroxyphenylbutyric	-	13.8	5.10×10^2	10-Heptadecenoic (C17:1)	0.48	-	-
4-Hydroxymandelic	-	110	4.10×10^3	Oleic (C18:1)	30.1	-	-
Benzylacetate	-	64.6	2.40×10^3				
2-Hydroxybutyric	-	0.76	2.70×10^1	**Dicarboxylic acids**			
Phenylpyruvic	-	9.41	3.40×10^2	Azelaic	0.04	-	-
				1,2-Benzenedicarboxylic	-	29.5	1.10×10^3
Alkanes							
1,3-Dihydroxybutane	8.51	-	-				

"-" denotes nothing detected.

As shown in Table 1, the individual phenolic compounds identified in the highest concentrations in *A. greatheadii* LGE include 4-phenyllactic acid, benzoic acid, 4-hydroxyphenylacetic acid, 4-hydroxy-benzoic acid and 4-methoxymandelic acid. Of the phenolic compounds best known for their health benefits and associated antioxidant properties, 4-hydroxyphenylacetic acid, 2,3-dihydroxybenzoic acid, protocatechuic acid, *p*-coumaric acid and caffeic acid were the most abundant. Of the four phytosterols identified, campesterol and β-sitosterol were by far the most abundant. Only one indole, indole-5-acetic acid was, however, identified in the LGE. Comparatively, higher concentrations of the above-mentioned polyphenols were also detected in the ELGE (when quantified as per dry mass ELGE). Different to the ethyl acetate/diethyl ether extracts of the LGE, however, hexahydrobenzoindole was the only indole identified in the ELGE, and surprisingly, no phytosterols were detected in this extract.

As shown in Table 2, ORAC and FRAP analyses of LGE and ELGE revealed the ELGE to have greater antioxidant capacity compared to the

LGE, which is supported by the higher total polyphenol contents detected in ELGE. The majority of the polyphenols in both the LGE and ELGE, as identified by GC-MS and confirmed spectrophometrically, are non-flavonoids, making-up 83.8% of the total polyphenol content of the LGE and 92.4 % of the ELGE. An interesting phenomenon was the absence of Aloe-emodin in the *A. greatheadii* extracts. This is of importance as many of the health benefits associated with other *Aloe* species (including similar leaf gel extracts of *A. ferox*, also indigenous to South Africa), are attributed to the presence of, amongst other compounds, Aloe-emodin [7]. Finally, the total sugar contents of these extracts were 5.43 g/100 g for the LGE and 83.76 g/100 g for the ELGE, 36% of which was quantified as glucose, 18% as fructose and the remainder as maltose and sucrose.

Table 2. Concentrations of Total Polyphenols, Flavonoids, Non-Flavonoids, Oxygen Radical Absorbance Capacity (ORAC) and Ferric Reducing Antioxidant Power (FRAP) in Lyophilized *Aloe greatheadii* var *davyana* Leaf Gel (LGE) and 95% Aqueous Ethanol Leaf Gel Extracts (ELGE).

Compound	LGE (dry mass)	LGE (wet mass)	ELGE (expressed as dry mass ELGE)	ELGE (expressed as dry mass LGE)	ELGE (expressed as wet mass LGE)
Total polyphenols (mg of GAE/100g ± SD)	45.1 ± 0.94	1.20 ± 0.03	263 ± 6.51	30.9 ± 0.77	0.82 ± 0.02
Total flavonoids (mg of CE/100g ± SD)	7.66 ± 0.26	0.20 ± 0.01	20.2 ± 0.50	2.37 ± 0.06	0.06 ± 0.001
Total non-flavonoids (by calculation)	37.8 ± 0.99	0.99 ± 0.03	243 ± 6.96	28.6 ± 0.82	0.75 ± 0.02
ORAC – hydrophyllic (µmol of TE/g)	59.0 ± 1.16	2.05 ± 0.4	83.0 ± 1.32	5.42 ± 1.21	0.19 ± 0.04
ORAC – lipophyllic (µmol of TE/g)	-	-	-	-	-
ORAC – total (µmol of TE/g)	59.0 ± 1.16	2.05 ± 0.4	83.0 ± 1.32	5.42 ± 1.21	0.19 ± 0.04
FRAP (µmol/g)	2.63 ± 0.21	0.09 ± 0.01	8.98 ± 0.21	0.58 ± 0.01	0.02 ± 0.001

"-" denotes nothing detected.

We previously reported on the phytochemical composition and antioxidant capacities of *A. ferox* LGE and ELGE [7]. Compared to this species, *A. greatheadii* generally shows less variety and lower concentrations of the

above mentioned health-associated antioxidant compounds. Similarly, Table 2 indicates the total polyphenol and non-flavonoid contents, as well as the antioxidant capacities of *A. greatheadii* LGE and ELGE, as measured by FRAP, to be lower than that as previously reported for *A. ferox*. The total flavonoid contents and the antioxidant capacities of *A. greatheadii* LGE, as measured by ORAC were, however, higher comparatively, which may be indicative of the types of polyphenols in *A. greatheadii* having stronger scavenging ability than ferric ion reducing potential. Apart from inter-species variation explaining these differences, soil conditions and climate may also play a role in the varying phytochemical contents of these plants.

From an analytical perspective, GC-MS analyses identified a larger number of compounds using direct LGE ethyl acetate/diethyl ether and hexane extractions, as compared to using the same extraction procedures on the ELGE, when quantified as per dry mass LGE (Table 1). This indicates that direct LGE ethyl acetate/diethyl ether and hexane extractions are best suited for general phytochemical characterization purposes. However, despite there being fewer compounds identified in the ELGE, the concentrations for many of the compounds with associated health benefits, and total sugars, were found to be between 1.2 to 1,250 times higher than the same compounds identified in the LGE, when expressed as per dry mass ELGE. This was further confirmed by the antioxidant capacity analyses showing higher activities in the latter extracts. This justifies the use of the latter approach for preparing extracts for use in *in vivo* or *in vitro* biological efficacy and mechanistic studies.

Epidemiological evidence supports the hypothesis that the consumption of foods rich in natural antioxidants plays an important role in the prevention of several chronic diseases associated with oxidative stress, including diabetes, cancer, hypertension and cardiovascular diseases [8]. Due to the fact that the majority of the phytochemicals identified in *A. greatheadii* were polyphenols/phenolic acids, one would expect these to be the major contributors to this plant's antioxidant capacity and its proposed use for alleviating or preventing diseases associated with oxidative stress [9, 10, 11].

Considering that the mechanism proposed for developing diabetes is hyperglycaemia induced oxidative stress [5, 12-14], the current use of *A. greatheadii* in traditional and commercial tonics for treating this disease may be justified. To date, various authors have reported on the anti-diabetic properties of a variety of other *Aloe* species from both human and animal trials, of which *Aloe vera* and *Aloe arborenscens* are by far the best

described. Interventions involving various extracts, including a 95% aqueous ethanol extract of these, have been shown to alleviate the diabetic state. By preventing hyperglycaemia induced oxidative stress and the associated pancreatic β-cell destruction, these plant extracts have been shown to increase insulin secretion by the pancreas, and in so doing correct the diabetes associated hyperglycaemia and dyslipidaemia [5, 12-14]. This action is ascribed to the various polyphenols present in these extracts, which alleviate the diabetic condition by lowering glucose uptake, and in doing so prevent hyperglycaemia [15, 16]. Additionally, the plant sterols identified in *A. greatheadii* also possess similar glucose lowering effects. Tanaka *et al.* (2006) reported reductions in both fasting and random blood glucose levels of *db/db* diabetic mice chronically treated with the same phytosterols from *A. vera* leaf gel [17]. Apart from these glucose lowering effects, phytosterols are better known for their total cholesterol and low-density lipid cholesterol (LDL-C) lowering effects [18]. As summarized by Devaraj and Jialal [19], evidence for this has been observed in hypercholesterolemic, diabetic and healthy volunteers [19]. The mechanism proposed by which phytosterols accomplish this, is by lowering cholesterol absorption due to the structural similarities that these compounds share with cholesterol [20-22]. Apart from lowering cardiovascular risk factors associated with diabetes and other diseases, β-sitosterol has been shown to influence a diabetic state positively by directly lowering fasting blood glucose levels by cortisol inhibition [23]. Furthermore, phytosterols have been shown to reduce biomarkers for oxidative stress and inflammation [19], as well as to reduce cancer development by a variety of mechanisms [24]. Based on the presence of the high amounts of many of the same polyphenols and phytosterols in *A. greatheadii* LGE and ELGE, this *Aloe* species may show promise in preventing or alleviating the progression of diseases associated with oxidative stress, including diabetes, cancer, hypertension and cardiovascular diseases. On the other hand, the total sugar/glucose contents of these extracts may be of concern, especially when considering using these extracts in the context of a diabetes intervention, as carbohydrate intake is considered a major factor in glycaemic control. Nielsen and co-workers report that a low carbohydrate diet, containing 20 % carbohydrates, is superior to a diet containing 55 - 60 % carbohydrates, with regards to controlling bodyweight, blood glucose levels and reducing in HbA_{1c} [25]. The American Diabetes Association (ADA) defines a low carbohydrate diet as less than 130g/d or 26% of a nominal 2,000 kcal (8,400 kJ) diet [26]. Considering the above-mentioned

recommended carbohydrate intakes for diabetics and the mechanisms by which the pholyphenols and phytosterols elicit their anti-diabetic actions (by lowering glucose absorption and protecting pancreatic β-cells from oxidative destruction), the sugar contents of these extracts may not necessarily be problematic due to the small amounts that would be additionally ingested during an intervention using these extracts. This, however, should be investigated, in addition to other methods of extraction which could potentially eliminate these sugars.

Conclusions

Analytically, direct LGE ethyl acetate/diethyl ether and hexane extractions produce better phytochemical characterization, whereas 95% aqueous ethanol extraction concentrates a number of health related compounds, justifying its applications to *in vivo* efficacy studies. From a medicinal application perspective, *A. greatheadii* contains a variety of compounds (esp. polyphenols and phytosterols) with confirmed antioxidant capacity, and putative therapeutic actions (including blood glucose, cholesterol and cortisol lowering properties) relating to the prevention or treatment of diabetes, cardiovascular disease, cancer and hypertension. No toxic compounds were detected in these *Aloe* extracts, however, due the presence of other confounders which may have been missed in this study, further confirmation of the proposed health benefits of these extracts through *in vivo* animal experimentation is strongly suggested.

Experimental

General

All analytical standards and reagents used for quantification, and those used for generating mass spectra for GC-MS identification, were purchased from Sigma-Aldrich (St Louis, MO, USA). All organic extraction solvents used were of ultra high purity purchased from Burdick and Jackson (USA). Folin-Ciocalteu's phenol reagent and other reagent chemicals were purchased from Merck (Darmstadt, Germany).

Plant material

Whole, freshly cut, *A. greatheadii* var. *davyana* leaves (100kg) were harvested from approximately 200 plants in the month of May (2007) from a rural area in the Potchefstroom district of the North West Province in South Africa (herbarium deposit site: AP Goossens Herbarium (code: PUC), Potchefstroom South Africa; voucher number : PUC 7951). All leaves were collected from mature plants with a circular diameter greater than 50 cm.

Sample preparation

The leaf skin was removed by hand and the leaf gel homogenized, lyophilized and stored at -20°C until analysis. This was termed the leaf gel extract (LGE). A large portion of the LGE was used for the preparation of a 95% aqueous ethanol leaf gel extract (ELGE). Batches (420g) of finely ground lyophilized *Aloe* gel were extracted using 95% aqueous ethanol (500mL), followed by sonication for 10 min and shaking for 1 hour. The solvent was collected following centrifugation at 3000 x *g* for 10 min. This was repeated 10 times to ensure total extraction of all compounds from the lyophilized extracts. The supernatants were pooled and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure in a rotary evaporator. The residue was stored in dry sterilized containers at -20°C until further use.

Ethyl acetate/diethylether extraction

3-Phenylbutyric acid (5mg/mL, 100µL) was added as an internal standard to LGE and ELGE (25mg) followed by sodium acetate buffer (0.125 M, 1mL) and β-glucuronidase (60µL). Samples were then incubated at 37°C for 3 hours. Incubated samples were subsequently extracted with ethyl acetate (6mL) followed by diethyl ether (3mL). After centrifugation, collected supernatants were pooled and dried under a nitrogen stream. Derivatization with bis(trimethylsilyl) trifloroacetamide (BSTFA, 100µL), trimethylchlorosilane (TMCS, 20µL) and pyridine (20µL) at 70°C for 30 min followed. After cooling to room temperature, 0.1µL of the derivatized extract was injected into the GC-MS via splitless injection.

Hexane Extraction for Fatty Acids

The internal standard, heptadecanoic acid (72 mM), was added to LGE and ELGE (25mg) followed by a 45 mM solution of butylated hydroxytoluene (100µL) and methanolic HCL (3N, 1mL). The samples were vortexed and incubated for 4 hours at 90°C. After cooling to room temperature, the samples were extracted twice with 2 ml of hexane, dried under a nitrogen stream and finally re-suspended with hexane (100µL), 0.1µL of which was injected onto the GC-MS via splitless injection.

Phytochemical Characterization via GC-MS

An Agilent 6890 GC ported to a 5973 MS detector (California, USA) was used for identification and quantification of individual phytochemicals, using MS libraries previously compiled from purchased standards. For the acquisition of an electron ionization mass spectrum, an ion source temperature of 200°C and electron energy of 70 eV was used. The GC was equipped with a SE-30 capillary column (Chemetrix, USA), a split/splitless injection piece (250°C) and direct GC-MS coupling (260°C). Helium (1 mL/min) was used as the carrier gas. The oven temperature program for analyzing the ethyl acetate/diethylether extracts utilized an initial oven temperature of 40°C, maintained for 2 min, followed by a steady climb to 350°C at a rate of 5°C/min. For the fatty acid analysis, hexane extracts were analyzed using an initial oven temperature of 50°C, maintained for 1.5 min, and then allowed to increase to 190°C at a rate of 30°C/min. This oven temperature was again maintained at 190°C for 5 min and then allowed to increase to 220°C at a rate of 8°C/min. This oven temperature was maintained for 2 min and finally ramped to 230°C at a rate of 3°C/min and maintained for a further 24 min.

Total Polyphenols

The total polyphenol contents of the LGE and ELGE were determined according to the Folin-Ciocalteu procedure [27]. Briefly, finely ground LGE or ELGE (10mg) was dissolved in H_2O (200µL) in a test tube and Folin-Ciocalteu's reagent (1mL) was added. This was allowed to stand for 8 min at room temperature. Next, sodium carbonate (7.5%, w/v, 0.8 mL) was added, mixed and allowed to stand for 30 min. Absorption was measured at 765 nm

(Shimadzu UV-1601 Spectrophotometer). The mean total phenolic contents (n = 3) were expressed as milligram gallic acid equivalents per 100g (mg GAE/100g dry mass or wet mass ± standard derivatives).

Total flavonoids

The total flavonoid contents of the LGE and ELGE were measured using the aluminium chloride assay as described by Zhishen and co-workers with slight modifications [28]. Briefly, LGE or ELGE (10mg) was dissolved in H_2O (1mL) in a test tube, to which 5% (w/v) $NaNO_2$ (60µL) was added. After 5 min, a 10% (w/v) $AlCl_3$ solution (60µL) was added. After 6 min, 1 M NaOH (400µL) was added and the total volume made up to 2mL with H_2O. The solution was mixed well and the absorbance measured at 510 nm against a reagent blank. Concentrations were determined using a catechin standard curve. Mean total flavonoid contents (n = 3) were expressed as milligrams catechin equivalents (CE) per 100g (mg CE/100g dry or wet mass ± standard deviation).

Oxygen Radical Absorbance Capacity (ORAC)

ORAC analyses of hydrophilic and lipophylic fractions of the LGE and ELGE were performed essentially as described by Prior *et al.* [29]. The analyses of lipophylic compounds were aided by the addition of randomly methylated β-cyclodextrin (kind gift from Dr R Prior) as a solubility enhancer as described by Huang *et al.* [30]. Briefly, in a volume of 200µL, the reaction contained 56 nM fluorescein as a target for free radical attack by 240 nM 2,2'-azobis(2-amidinopropane) dihydrochloride. A fluorescence plate reader (BioTEK FL-600, UK) was used and the decay of fluorescence of fluorescein (excitation 485 nm, emission 520 nm) was measured every 5 min for 2 hours at 37°C. Costar black opaque (96-well) plates were used in the assays. Trolox was used as a standard at a range of between 0-20 µM, giving a polynomial (2nd order) curve fit analysis. Mean values (n = 3) of antioxidant capacities were expressed as µmole trolox equivalents (TE) / g wet and dry mass ± standard deviation.

Ferric Reducing Antioxidant Power (FRAP)

FRAP values of the LGE and ELGE were determined essentially as described previously [31]. Briefly, the reduction of a Fe^{3+}-2,3,5-triphenyltetrazolium complex in the assay, by the antioxidants in the samples, was monitored at 593nm. As a standard, $FeSO_4$ was used and the FRAP activities of the samples were expressed as the mean (n = 3) µmol Fe^{2+}/g wet and dry mass ± standard deviation.

Sugar content

The total sugar content as well as the type of sugar present in the LGE and ELGE were determined at the Department of Agriculture, Directorate Food Safety and Quality Assurance, Division Analytical Services North, Pretoria, South Africa. The total sugar content was determined by Refractive index (RI) as previously described [32]. The concentrations of fructose and glucose were determined via HPLC using a Supelcosil LC-NH2 column (Supelco, 250 x 4.6 mm, 5 µm, Sigma-Aldrich Catalogue No: 58338) and 75% Acetonitrile as mobile phase with a flow rate of 1.5 mL/min at 30°C and detected by a Refractive Index (RI) detector. The results are expressed as percentage sugars (m/m) in LGE and ELGE.

References

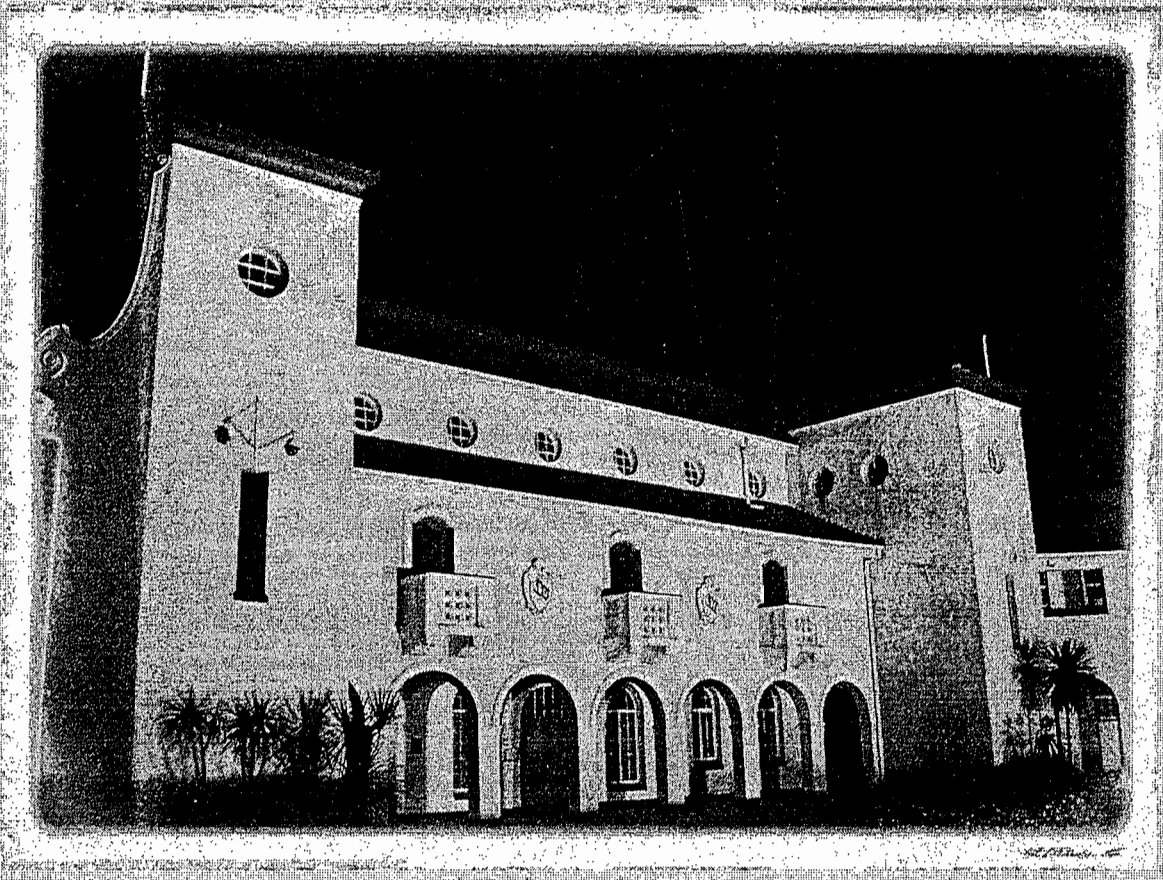
1. Cunningham, A.B.; *African medical plants: setting priorities at the interface between conservation and primary healthcare. People and plants working paper 1.* UNESCO: Paris, 1993; http://nsdl.loncapa.org/res/msu/botonl/b_online/library/peopleplants/wp/wp1/intro.htm [Date of access: 28 Feb. 2007].
2. Thring, T.S.A.; Weitz F.M. Medicinal plant use in the Bredasdorp/Elim region of the Southern Overberg in the Western Cape Province of South Africa. *J. Ethnopharmacol.* **2006**, *103*, 261-275.
3. Morton, J.F. Folk uses and commercial exploitation of aloe leaf pulp. *Econ. Botany* **1961**, 311-319.
4. Crosswhite, F.S.; Crosswhite, C.D. Aloe vera, plant symbolism and the threshing floor. *Desert Plants* **1984**, *6*, 43-50.
5. Reynolds, T.; Dweck, A.C. Aloe vera leaf gel: a review update. *J. Ethnopharmacol.* **1999**, *68*, 3-37.

6. Rajasekaran, S.; Sivagnaman, K.; Subramanian, S. Modulatory effects of Aloe vera leaf gel extract on oxidative stress in rats treated with streptozotocin. *J. Pharm. Pharmacol.* **2005**, *57*, 241-246.
7. Loots, Du T.; Van der Westhuizen, F.H.; Botes, L. *Aloe ferox* leaf gel phytochemical content, antioxidant capacity and possible health benefits. *J. Agric. Food. Chem.* **2007**, *55*, 6891-6896.
8. Willcox, J.K.; Ash, S.L.; Catignami G.L. Antioxidants and the prevention of chronic disease. *Crit. Rev. Food. Sci. Nutr.* **2004**, *44*, 275-295.
9. Cao, G.; Sofic, E.; Prior, R.L. Antioxidant and prooxidant behavior of flavonoids: structure-activity relationships. *Free. Radic. Biol. Med.* **1997**, *22*, 749-760.
10. Herraiz, T.; Galisteo, J. Endogenous and Dietary Indoles: A Class of Antioxidants and Radical Scavengers in the ABTS Assay. *Free. Radic. Res.* **2004**, *38*, 323-331.
11. Scalbert, A.; Manach, C.; Morand, C.; Re´Me´ Sy, C. Dietary polyphenols and the prevention of disease. *Crit. Rev. Food. Sci. Nutr.* **2005**, *45*, 287-306.
12. Agarwal, PO. Prevention of atheromatous heart disease. *Angiology* **1985**, *36*, 485-492.
13. Beppu, H.T.; Koike, K.; Shimpo, T.; Chihara, M.; Hoshino, C.I.; Kuzuya, H. Radical-scavenging effects of Aoe arborescens Miller on prevention of pancreatic islet β-cell destruction in rats. *J. Ethnoparmacol.* **2003**, *89*, 37-45.
14. Rajasekaran, S.; Sivagnaman, K.; Subramanian, S. Antioxidant effect of Aloe vera gel extract in streptozotocin-induced diabetes in rats. *Pharmacol. Rep.* **2005**, *57*, 90-96.
15. Cao, H.; Hininger-Favier, I.; Kelly, M.A.; Benaraba, R.; Dawson, H.D.; Coves, S.; Roussel, A.M.; Anderson, R.A. Green tea polyphenol extract regulates the expression of genes involved in glucose uptake and insulin signalling in rats fed a high fructose diet. *J. Agric. Food. Chem.* **2007**, *55*, 6372-6378.
16. Johnston, K.; Sharp, P.; Clifford, M.; Morgan, L. Dietary polyphenols decrease glucose uptake by human intestinal Caco-2 cells. *Fed. Eur. Biochem. Soc. Lett.* **2005**, *579*, 1653-7.
17. Tanaka, M.; Misawa, E.; Ito, Y.; Habara, N.; Nomaguchi, K.; Yamada, M.; Toida, T.; Hayasawa, H.; Takase, M.; Inagaki, M.; Higuchi, R.

Identification of five phytosterols from aloe vera gel as anti-diabetic compounds. *Biol. Pharm. Bull.* **2006**, *29*, 1418-1422.

18. Patch, C.S.; Tapsell, L.C.; Williams, P.G.; Gordon, M. Plant sterols as dietary adjuvants in the reduction of cardiovascular risk: theory and evidence. *Vasc. Health. Risk. Manag.* **2006**, *2*, 157-162.
19. Devaraj, S.; Jialal, I. The role of dietary supplementation with plant sterols and stanols in the prevention of cardiovascular disease. *Nutr. Rev.* **2006**, *64*, 348-354.
20. Lichtenstein, A.H.; Deckelbaum, R. AHA Science Advisory. Stanol/sterol ester-containing foods and blood cholesterol levels. A statement for healthcare professionals from the Nutrition Committee of the Council on Nutrition, Physical Activity, and Metabolism of the American Heart Association. *Circulation* **2001**, *103*, 177-1179.
21. Normen, L.; Dutta, P.; Lia, A.; Andersson, H. Soy sterol esters and beta-sitostanol ester as inhibitors of cholesterol absorption in human small bowel. *Am. J. Clin. Nutr.* **2000**, *71*, 908-913.
22. Jones, P.J.; Ntanios, F.Y.; Raeini-Sarjaz, M.; Vanstone, C.A. Cholesterol-lowering efficacy of a sitostanol-containing phytosterol mixture with a prudent diet in hyperlipidemic men. *Am. Clin. Nutr.* **1999**, *69*, 1144-1150.
23. McAnuff, M.A.; Harding, W.W.; Omoruyi, F.O.; Jacobs, H.; Morrison, E.Y.; Asemota, H.N. Hypoglycemic effects of steroidal sapogenins isolated from Jamaican bitter yam, Dioscorea polygonoides. *Food. Chem. Toxicol.* **2005**, *43*, 1667-1672.
24. Bradford, P.G.; Awad, A.B. Phytosterols as anticancer compounds. *Mol. Nutr. Food. Res.* **2007**, *51*, 161-170.
25. Nielsen, J.V.; Jönsson, E.A. Low-carbohydrate diet in type 2 diabetes. Stable improvement of body weight and glycaemic control during 22 months follow-up. *Nutr. Metab. (Lond).* **2006**, *3:22*, 1-5.
26. American Diabetes Association. Nutrition recommendations and interventions for diabetes. *Diabet. Care* **2007**, *30(Suppl 1)*, S48-S65
27. Singleton, V.L.; Rossi, J.A. Colorimetry of total phenolics with phosphomolybdic-phosphostungastic acid reagents. *Am. J. Enol. Vitic.* **1965**, *16*, 144-158.
28. Marinova, D.; Robarova, F.; Atanassova, M. Total phenolics and total flavonoids in bulgarian fruits and vegetables. *J. Univ. Chem. Technol. Metall.* **2005**, *40*, 255-260.

29. Prior, R.L.; Hoang, H.; Gu, L.; Wu, X.; Bacchiocca, M.; Howard, L.; Hampsch-Woodill, M.; Huang, D.M.; Ou, B.; Jacob, R. Assays for hydrophilic and lipophilic antioxidant capacity (ORAC(FL)) of plasma and other biological and food samples. *J. Agric. Food. Chem.* **2003**, *51*, 3273-3279.
30. Huang, D.; Ou, B.; Hampsc-Woodill, M.; Flanagan, J.A.; Deemer, E.K. Development and validation of oxygen radical absorbance capacity assays for lipophilic antioxidants using randomly methylated beta-cyclodextrin as the solubility enhancer. *J. Agric. Food. Chem.* **2002**, *27*, 1815-1821.
31. Benzie, I.F.; Strain, J.J. Ferric reducing/antioxidant power assay: direct measure of total antioxidant activity of biological fluids and modified version for simultaneous measurement of total antioxidant power and ascorbic acid concentration. *Meth. Enzymol.* **1999**, *299*, 15-27.
32. Stevens, J.W.; Baier, W.E. Corrections for obtaining soluble solids from refractometer readings (soluble solids as sucrose). *Ind. & Eng. Chem., Anal. Ed. 11* **1939**, 447-449.



Chapter 5

Antidiabetic Effects of Aloe ferox and Aloe greatheadii var. davyana Leaf Gel Extracts in a Streptozotocin Diabetes Rat Model

Antidiabetic Effects of *Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* Leaf Gel Extracts in a Streptozotocin Diabetes Rat Model

Lisa Botes[†], Marlien Pieters[†], Md Shahidul Islam[†], Du Toit Loots[‡*]

[†]TReNDS – Centre of Excellence for Nutrition, School for Physiology, Nutrition and Consumer Science, [‡]Centre for Human Metabonomics, School for Physical and Chemical Sciences, North-West University, Private Bag X6001, Box 594, Potchefstroom, 2531, South Africa.

* To whom correspondence should be addressed. Tel: +27-18-299-1818. Fax: +27-18-299-1818. E-mail: dutoit.loots@nwu.ac.za.

Coauthors:

Marlien Pieters: E-mail: marlien.pieters@nwu.ac.za

Md Shahidul Islam: E-mail: Islamd@ukzn.ac.za

Lisa Botes: E-mail: 12167398@nwu.ac.za

ABSTRACT

The purpose of this study was to investigate the antidiabetic effects of ethanol extracts of *Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* leaf gel in a streptozotocin (STZ) diabetic rat model. Compared to the normal control group, STZ resulted in increased relative liver and kidney weight, end-point plasma glucose values, fructosamine, oxidative stress, liver enzymes, total cholesterol, triglycerides, VLDL-C and TC:HDL-C values and reduced serum insulin levels. Treatment with *A. greatheadii* moderately increased serum insulin accompanied by a modest decreased end-point plasma glucose and decreased liver enzyme ALP, in addition to moderately increased HDL-C and decreased TC:HDL-C values. *A. ferox* supplementation resulted in moderately increased serum insulin, accompanied by slight corrections in ALP and HDL-C, however, without a decrease in end-point plasma glucose. Little effect was seen on other diabetes markers. Glibenclamide resulted in correction of almost all diabetic markers, with the increased insulin secretions resulting in a normalization of end-point blood glucose values and a correction of the diabetes induced hyperlipidemia. Therefore, oral administration of the Aloe extracts, *A. greatheadii* in particular, resulted in moderate improvements in the STZ induced diabetic state, as evaluated by the measurement of various biochemical diabetes markers related to diabetes induced abnormalities in glucose, lipid, insulin and liver enzyme levels,

46 justifying further investigations into the use of these traditional remedies for
47 the treatment of diabetes.
48
49 **Keywords:** Antidiabetic effects, *Aloe ferox*, *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana*,
50 Streptozotocin-induced diabetes.
51
52 **INTRODUCTION**
53
54 The increase in the number of individuals with type 2 diabetes in
55 developing countries especially has resulted in an upsurge in interest in the
56 use of natural and traditional remedies for treating this disease (*1*). The total
57 prevalence of type 2 diabetes is thought to be as high as 6% of the global
58 population and is likely to rise as the population ages and becomes more
59 obese (*2*). The significant worldwide increase in the prevalence of childhood
60 obesity further amplifies the diabetes epidemic (*3*).
61 Diabetes mellitus is a non-communicable disease considered to be one of
62 the five leading causes of death worldwide (*4*), characterized by
63 hyperglycemia and hyperlipidemia as a result of altered glucose and lipid
64 metabolism (*5*). Recently, the search for suitable antidiabetic agents has
65 focused on plants used in traditional medicine. Although diabetes is being
66 managed and treated in many first world countries by exclusively using
67 conventional, synthetic drugs, in many developing countries, diabetic patients
68 have resorted to traditional medicinal herbs for the treatment of this disease,

largely due to these being more easily accessible and less expensive for those living in poor socioeconomic conditions (*6*).

Of the many traditional treatments for diabetes, Aloe is probably one most used by these traditional healers. Beppu et al., Rajasekaran et al., and others confirmed the antidiabetic effects of certain *Aloe* species (*A. arborescens* and *A. vera*) in streptozotocin (STZ)-induced diabetic rats (*4, 5, 7, 8*), however, these beneficial effects were not seen by all groups (*9*). *Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* are indigenous to South Africa and are widely used by both traditional healers and sold as ingredients to a variety of commercially available tonics for the treatment for a number of ailments, including diabetes. The medicinal use and commercialization of *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* is, however, primarily based on anecdotal evidence and / or research done on *A. vera* and *A. arborescens*. The phytochemical composition and antioxidant capacity of various extracts of *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* have only recently been described and there is reason to believe that these extracts may have possible health benefits, especially for treating diabetes (*10, 11*).

This evidence subsequently motivated the current exploration of the antidiabetic effects of the same extracts of *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* prepared by ethanol extraction (*10, 11*), administered at a similar upper dosage level as has been previously described by other groups using other Aloe species (*8, 12*), in a STZ-induced diabetic rat model.

92 **MATERIAL AND METHODS**

93

94 **Collection of plant materials.** Whole, freshly cut, *A. greatheadii* var.
95 *davyana* leaves (100 kg) were harvested from approximately 200 plants in the
96 month of May (2007) from a rural area in the Potchefstroom district of the
97 North West Province in South Africa (herbarium deposit site: AP Goossens
98 Herbarium (code: PUC), Potchefstroom South Africa; voucher number : PUC
99 7951). All leaves were collected from mature plants with a circular diameter
100 greater than 50 cm. Whole, freshly cut, *A. ferox* leaves (100 kg) were kindly
101 supplied by the Aloe Ferox Trust (herbarium deposit site: AP Goossens
102 Herbarium (code: PUC), Potchefstroom South Africa; voucher number : PUC
103 9940). These leaves were harvested in September 2007 from farms in the
104 Albertinia region in the Western Cape of South Africa.

105 **Preparation of Aloe extracts.** The *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* var.
106 *davyana* leaf gel extracts were prepared using the method previously
107 described (*12*) with slight modifications as described by Loots et al., 2007
108 and Botes et al., 2008 (*10, 11*). An aqueous suspension was prepared by
109 dissolving suitable amounts of ethanol free extract to the desired
110 concentration. The solutions were prepared fresh daily and administered
111 intragastrically once daily.

112 **Animals, induction of diabetes and interventions.** The study was
113 approved by the Ethics Committee (Evaluation Sub-Committee for
114 Experimental Animals) of the North-West University (Potchefstroom, South

115 Africa) (Ref: 06D06) and the study was conducted in accordance with the
116 principles of laboratory animal care (NIH Publication "Guide for the Care
117 and Use of Laboratory Animals", No. 85–23, revised 1985). Fifty male
118 Wistar rats weighing 200g–250g were randomly divided into five groups of
119 ten rats each as follows: normal control rats (NC), STZ-induced diabetic
120 control rats (DC), STZ-induced diabetic rats receiving 300mg/kg *A.*
121 *greatheadii* var. *davyana* leaf gel extract (DAG), STZ-induced diabetic rats
122 receiving 300mg/kg *A. ferox* leaf gel extract (DAF) and STZ-induced diabetic
123 rats receiving 600µg/kg glibenclamide (DG) as a positive control for 5 weeks
124 (*8, 12*).

125 Following a 12 hour fast, the rats in the DC, DG, DAF and DAG groups
126 were intraperitoneally injected with a single dose of STZ (40mg/kg) (Sigma,
127 St. Louis, MO., USA) prepared in 0.1 M of sodium citrate buffer (pH 4.5)
128 and left for one week for diabetes to develop (*8, 12*). STZ is used to induce
129 diabetes (*13*) via destruction of the β-cells as a result of oxidative stress, and
130 can be used to develop a diabetes model resembling that of type 1 or type 2
131 diabetes, depending on the dosage used. At this dosage of STZ used in this
132 study, a partial destruction of β-cells resulted in a mild insulin deficient state
133 more closely resembling that of type 2 diabetes due to the fact that the
134 resultant model is insulin independent (*14*). The rats in the NC group
135 received the same volume of citrate buffer intraperitoneally (*8*). Diabetes
136 was confirmed by tail prick using an Accu-Check® glucometer (Roche

diagnostics) and Onetouch Surestep glucose strips (Lot No. 285366A) by a blood glucose value of > 14.mmol/L (*12*).

Aloe leaf gel extracts and glibenclamide were prepared using double distilled sterile deionised water (*8, 12*). The rats then received either 300 mg/kg of one of the two leaf gel extracts or 600 μg/kg glibenclamide in a volume of approximately 1 ml (*8, 12*) via intragastric tube once daily, depending on their grouping. The solutions were prepared fresh prior to daily dosing for the entire five week intervention period.

Blood sampling. Fasted rats were sacrificed at the end of the intervention by cervical decapitation and blood collected as described previously (*8, 12*). Blood samples were prepared according to the requirements of the various analytical methods. Plasma was collected in heparin tubes and serum was collected in tubes containing no anticoagulant. The blood was centrifuged at 4°C for 15 minutes at 2000g and plasma and serum were collected from the respective tubes and frozen at -84 °C until further analysis.

Biochemical analyses. Fructosamine was determined by a colorimetric endpoint reaction (Cobas® (Roche diagnostics)).

Serum insulin was measured by using an Ultrasensitive Rat Insulin ELISA kit (Mercodia). The assay was performed as instructed by the supplier. Briefly, during incubation, insulin in the sample reacts with peroxidase-conjugated anti-insulin antibodies and anti-insulin antibodies bound to the microtitration well. The conjugate then reacts with 3,3',5,5'-tetramethylbenzidine in a colorimetric end-point reaction. Results were

160 obtained by measuring an increased absorbance at 450nm. This analysis was
161 performed on a Multiscan Ascent spectrophotometer (Wiesbaden, Germany).
162 Insulin resistance was calculated using the homeostasis model assessment
163 (HOMA) formula: HOMA = (fasting insulin (μIU/mL) × fasting venous
164 glucose (mmol/L)) / 22.5 *(8)*. Serum triacylglycerol (TG), total cholesterol
165 (TC), HDL-cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol and VLDL-cholesterol were
166 measured by Pathcare Laboratories (Potchefstroom, South Africa). Total
167 cholesterol (TC) was determined using a polychromatic end point technique
168 employing the horseradish peroxide (HPO), HDL-cholesterol using the
169 accelerator selective detergent method and LDL-cholesterol and triglycerides,
170 using a biochromatic end point technique. Alanine transaminase (ALT),
171 alkaline phophatase (ALP) and venous blood glucose levels were measured
172 using a Vitros DT60 II Chemistry Analyser (Ortho-Clinical Diagnostics,
173 Rochester, New York, USA), with Vitros reagents and controls.
174 Ferric reducing antioxidant power in serum and tissue was determined
175 colorimetrically by the FRAP assay as previously described *(15)* using a
176 BioTek FL600 plate reader (Winooski, VT, USA) at a wavelength of 595nm.
177 The Diacron reactive metabolites (dROMs) test (DIACRON International,
178 Grosseto, Italy) was used to measure the serum reactive oxygen metabolite
179 pool. The assay was performed as instructed by the supplier. The
180 colorimetric assay was performed kinetically on a BioTek plate reader
181 measuring change in absorbance at 560nm over a period of 15 min at 25°C.

Samples were quantified using a standard and expressed as Carratelli units (CARR U) where 1 CARR U corresponds to 0.08 mg/100 ml H_2O_2.

Statistical analysis. The computer software package Statistica® (Statsoft Inc, Tulsa, OK, USA) was used for data analysis. Data are expressed as a mean and 95% CI. Differences between the groups were determined by using the analysis of variance (ANOVA) and analysis of co-variances (ANCOVA) when adjusting for possible confounders. Where significance between the groups was indicated with the ANOVA, the Tukey honest significant difference test for unequal *N* was used to determine between which groups the differences occurred. Statistical significance tests are dependent on sample size and have a tendency to yield smaller p-values as the size of the data sets increase (*16*). Small sample sizes (as is often the case in animal studies) may, however, lead to failure to detect a true effect (*16*). In these cases, effect size calculations, which are independent of sample size, are an objective measure of the likelihood of a difference having a practical/clinical significance, can be used (*17*). In order to determine whether the results may have practical relevance, effect sizes were calculated according to the following formula: $d=|x_1-x_2|/s_{max}$, where x_1 is the mean of one group and x_2 the mean of the other group and s_{max} the maximum standard deviation of the two groups. The likelihood of practical relevance is reported as an effect size (d) and can be interpreted as follows: $d \leq 0.2$ is a small likelihood, $d = 0.5$ is a medium likelihood, $d = 0.8$ is a large likelihood for effect for parametric data *(16)*. Rosenthal *et al.* (*17*) state the following on

the use of effect sizes: "...suppose we were confronted with a "non-significant" p and a "large" effect size - what should this tell us? Were we simply to conclude on the basis of the significance level that "nothing happened", we might be making a serious mistake. A small sample size may have led to failure to detect the true effect, in which case, we should continue this line of investigation with a larger sample size...".

RESULTS

Five rats did not develop diabetes and/or recovered spontaneously and nine rats died during the study, resulting in unequal group sizes.

Body weight. The normal control rats gained 72.8g on average during the five weeks while the diabetic control and glibenclamide group gained a mean of 5.63g and 21.61g, respectively. The *A. greatheadii* and *A. ferox* groups, however, showed a mean weight reduction of 9.7g and 10.9g during the five week intervention (Table 1).

Relative organ weight. Only small differences were observed in the mean pancreatic weights, expressed as percentage of body weight, between the five groups (Table 1). While the mean pancreatic weight of the normal control group was not significantly higher than that of the diabetic control group, the effect size calculation indicated that the difference in organ weight may have a moderate practical significance. The glibenclamide intervention group had a significantly lower pancreatic weight than the normal control group (0.25%

vs 0.29%). The normal control rats had lower mean liver and kidney weights, expressed as percentage of body weight, than the diabetic control rats. All three interventions tested did little to change this, with all three groups having mean liver and kidney weights still significantly higher than that of the normal control rats.

Diabetes markers. As described in Table 2, baseline glucose determinations done via tail prick revealed no significant differences between groups ($p=0.785$), indicating all rats to be in the same state of normal glycemia prior to diabetes induction. End-point plasma glucose values, after the diabetes induction and the interventions that followed, show significant differences between the groups ($p=0.0001$) with a significant increase in the diabetic control group comparative to the normal control group as would be expected. *A. greatheadii* decreased the diabetes induced plasma hyperglycemia non-significantly but with clinical relevance as indicated by the effect size calculations. The *A. ferox* intervention had less of an influence comparatively. The glibenclamide intervention on the other hand had a large effect, lowering plasma glucose to values no longer significantly different from normal ($p=0.954$). Fructosamine concentrations were significantly elevated in the diabetic control group compared to the normal control group ($p=0.0001$) (Table 2). The interventions, however, had no effect on restoring these values. In fact, the fructosamine values in the glibenclamide group were not only increased compared to the normal control group but also compared to the diabetic control group. This increase is, however, not

considered to be of clinical relevance (d<0.2). As expected, serum insulin levels decreased significantly due to the STZ-induced diabetes, compared to the NC group (p=0.001). Effect size calculations also show high practical significance (d=1.49). Serum insulin concentrations in the *A. greatheadii*, *A. ferox* and glibenclamide groups corrected somewhat, with glibenclamide having the largest influence. The effect sizes indicate these corrections to be clinically relevant for all 3 interventions. These changes in insulin values correlate to the changes in end-point glucose values, as an inverse correlation can be expected between serum insulin and plasma glucose values. When comparing insulin values between the groups after adjusting for change in body weight during the intervention, the differences in serum insulin were no longer significant, suggesting that the effect of the treatments on insulin levels may be related to the weight changes observed in these groups. Furthermore, as expected, the diabetic group showed a non-significant increase in insulin resistance when compared to the normal control group. This increase, however, showed large practical significance. The glibenclamide intervention showed a normalization of insulin resistance (p=0.978, compared to normal control), however, neither of the Aloe interventions showed any correction to this (Table 2).

Liver enzymes. The STZ-induced diabetes resulted in a significant increase in the plasma ALP (p=0.0001). The Aloe interventions both resulted in a reduction in diabetes induced ALP, with a significant reduction in the *A. greatheadii* group (874.3U/L vs 11145U/L). Glibenclamide significantly

reduced the diabetes induced ALP to levels no longer significantly different from normal control levels (323.7U/L vs 105.3U/L) (p=0.077). Effects size calculations showed that these changes in all the intervention groups were large enough to have practical significance (Table 2). STZ-diabetes resulted in a clinically significant increase in ALT levels although not statistically significantly so. The Aloe interventions did not correct this and the glibenclamide significantly further increased plasma ALT levels (131.2U/L vs 74.6U/L).

Lipids. STZ-induced diabetes resulted in significantly increased levels of TC (p=0.001), Trig (p=0.015), VLDL (p=0.018) and TC:HDL-C (p=0.0001) levels in the diabetic control group when compared to the NC group. Additionally, effect size calculations indicated a high practical significance for all these changes (Table 2). The increase in HDL-C in the diabetic control group compared to the normal control group was unexpected. Even so, both Aloe interventions showed a further increase in the HDL-C values compared to that of the diabetic control group resulting in a modest improvement in the TC:HDL-C ratio in the *A. greatheadii* group compared to the diabetic control group. After adjustment for change in body weight during the intervention, there was no longer any significant difference in HDL-C between the five groups suggesting that the increases in HDL-C observed in both aloe groups may be related to the weight loss observed in these groups. The glibenclamide intervention, comparatively better restored the majority of these diabetic lipid markers to levels no longer significantly

297 different from the normal control group, except for TC (TC: p=0.060, Trig:
298 p=0.219, HDL-C: p=0.992 and VLDL-C: p=0.235), although not
299 significantly so compared to diabetic control, but with moderate to large
300 effect sizes.

301 **Oxidative stress and antioxidant markers.** STZ-induced diabetes had no
302 effect on dROM values, however, FRAP values decreased significantly in the
303 diabetic control group compared to the normal control group. None of the
304 three treatments significantly bettered the oxidative stress and antioxidant
305 markers.

306

307 **DISCUSSION**

308

309 This is the first intervention study investigating the possible antidiabetic
310 properties of *A. greatheadii* and *A. ferox*. Both aloe species have previously
311 been shown to contain antidiabetic phytochemicals (*10, 11*). An intervention
312 dosage of 300mg/kg ethanol leaf gel extracts of *A. greatheadii* and *A. ferox*
313 (upper dosage level comparative to other groups and identical to the dosage
314 used for successfully testing ethanol leaf gel extracts of *A.vera* (*8, 12*)), were
315 administered to STZ-induced diabetic rats over a period of 5 weeks.
316 Considering the STZ diabetes animal model used in this study, a single
317 intraperitoneal dose of 40mg STZ per kg body weight, produced chronic
318 hyperglycemia after seven days. As STZ selectively destroys the pancreatic
319 β-cells, insulin deficiency occurs, which in turn results in the hyperglycemia

320 (*18*). Furthermore, due to the uncontrolled diabetic state demonstrated by the
321 chronic and end-point hyperglycemia in the DC group compared to the NC
322 group, an expected increase in fructosamine levels was observed in the DC
323 group as compared to the NC group (Table 2) (*9*). This chronic
324 hyperglycemia may additionally result in hyperglycemia-induced oxidative
325 stress (*19*), explaining the slightly increased dROM and significantly reduced
326 FRAP values seen in this STZ diabetes model. As expected, insulin
327 resistance occurred. Furthermore, the STZ diabetes model used in this study
328 showed increased fasting levels of TC, TG, HDL-C, VLDL-C and TC:HDL-
329 C, which is also characteristic of these models (*18*) in addition to increased
330 levels of ALT and ALP in the bloodstream (*20, 21*). Apart from these
331 biochemical changes, this model additionally showed considerably reduced
332 weight gain, increased liver mass, increased kidney mass and a decreased
333 pancreatic mass, which is consistent to previous findings (*22, 23, 24, 25, 26,*
334 *27*).

335 The fact that glibenclamide, a typical type 2 diabetes medication, almost
336 entirely normalized the diabetic state, shows this STZ-diabetes model
337 satisfactory for investigating non-insulin dependent diabetes, similar to what
338 is seen in type 2 diabetes (except for investigations of insulin resistance, as
339 will be discussed later) (*18*).

340 The previously reported phytochemical composition of *A. greatheadii* and
341 *A. ferox* leaf gel extracts, shows the presence of a number of possible
342 antidiabetic phytochemicals, including phenolic acids, polyphenols,

343 phytosterols and indoles (*10, 11*), and hence these extracts are thought to
344 potentially have benefit in the treatment of diabetes. The *A. greatheadii* leaf
345 gel extract intervention resulted in a decreased hyperglycemic state when
346 compared to the diabetic control group accompanied by increased insulin
347 levels. Although not significant by ANOVA, the large effect size calculated,
348 does, however, indicate that this change seen may have a high
349 practical/clinical impact. The *A. ferox* intervention resulted in a similar
350 insulin secretion effect, however, with no change to the hyperglycemia. The
351 slightly stronger antidiabetic action of *A. greatheadii* comparative to the *A.*
352 *ferox*, can be explained by the higher concentrations of the potentially
353 protective phytochemicals previously identified in this extract comparative to
354 that of *A. ferox (10)*. Despite the increased insulin secretion and the
355 consequent reduced blood glucose levels seen in these intervention groups,
356 insulin resistance was not improved. In fact, a slightly worsened (non-
357 significant with large effect size) insulin resistance occurred. Similarly, the
358 fructosamine concentrations (an indicator of blood glucose control over a 21
359 day period (*28*) remained unchanged. These results suggest that *A. ferox* and
360 *A. greatheadii*, may show some effect in ameliorating the STZ diabetes
361 induced hyperglycemia by increasing insulin secretion by the pancreatic β-
362 cells, however, the slightly worsened insulin resistance and unchanged
363 fructosamine, may be indicative that longer interventions with these extracts
364 may be necessary, or that higher dosages may be required. Although the Aloe
365 interventions may have possible β-cell protective effects, which result in the

366 slightly increased insulin secretions and consequent lowering of the blood
367 glucose levels (by *A. greatheadii*), these interventions (administered as
368 300mg/kg for 5 weeks) may have been unable to activate the many other
369 mechanisms responsible for lowering of a hyperglycemic state e.g. 5'
370 adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase (AMPK) (*29*), ATP/AMP
371 ratios (*30*) and the effects of the increased FFA on peroxisome proliferator-
372 activated receptors (PPAR) (*31*) and retinol binding protein 4 (*32*) and its
373 influence on glucose transporter 4 (GLUT4) (*33*), hence, not being able to
374 influence glucose uptake enough, compared to insulin secretion, to influence
375 the diabetes induced insulin resistance positively. More importantly,
376 however, it has been shown that excessive glucose production rather than
377 insulin resistance accounts for hyperglycemia in recent-onset STZ-diabetic
378 rats, hence, the calculation for determining insulin resistance as used in this
379 instance, may not be appropriate for this particular model. Islam and Loots
380 (2009) further support this suggesting that an STZ-diabetes model is not the
381 best suited model for monitoring changes in insulin resistance and other
382 models should be considered for more accurate investigations of this e.g. a
383 high fat diet fed diabetes model (*18*). The glibenclamide intervention also
384 resulted in increased insulin secretion with large effect size which totally
385 ameliorated the hyperglycemic state after the five week intervention period
386 ($p=0.0001$), with normalization of the STZ induced insulin resistance.
387 Comparatively, glibenclamide, showed a far better effect in ameliorating STZ
388 diabetes hyperglycemia than the Aloe interventions did. The fructosamine

389 levels on the other hand were unexpectedly, significantly increased, relative
390 to the diabetic control. As fructosamine is a marker for long term glucose
391 control, and the fact that the weekly glucose determinations indicated that the
392 glucose concentrations only returned to normal during the last week of the
393 intervention (data not shown), may explain the lack of improvement in the
394 fructosamine levels. Additionally, despite glibenclamide restoring the
395 diabetes induced hyperglycemia, it had little effect on normalizing the
396 oxidative stress markers (dROM and FRAP). Furthermore, as is the case
397 with the elevated fructosamine levels, a longer duration of stabilized blood
398 glucose levels may be required before these markers return to normal.

399 With regards to the abnormal lipid profiles induced by the STZ-diabetic
400 state, the *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* interventions resulted in a non-
401 significant general increase in the lipid markers analyzed, with moderate
402 effect sizes calculated for the *A. greatheadii* intervention (except for TC,
403 showing increased values, however, without significance or effect sizes
404 comparative to DC). In the *A. greatheadii* group, the increased TC may
405 largely be a result of increased HDL-C as can be seen in the decreased
406 TC:HDL-C ratio. This generalized hyperlipidemia seen in these groups may
407 be attributed to an increase in fat absorption via the gut as a result of
408 abnormally increased levels of small intestinal acyl-CoA:cholesterol
409 acyltransferase (ACAT) activity (*34*), which is known to be elevated when
410 insulin is deficient *(35)*. Unfortunately the exact effect of insulin on ACAT
411 is still unclear. Another possible explanation could be an increased activation

412 of hormone sensitive lipase (HSL) (*35*). Furthermore, adjustment for weight
413 change during the intervention affected only HDL-C levels suggesting that
414 the increased HDL-C levels observed in the Aloe treatment groups may be
415 related to the observed weight loss in these groups. HDL-C has been shown
416 to increase with weight reduction (*37*). From these results it is evident that
417 although these Aloe interventions, at a dosage of 300 mg/kg for 5 weeks,
418 have some merit in restoring hyperglycemia through increased insulin
419 secretion, they show little to no effect in restoring the hyperlipidemia
420 associated with STZ induced diabetes. However, due to the fact that these
421 extracts have been previously described to contain lipid lowering
422 phytochemicals (*10, 11*), it does beg the question as to whether a higher
423 dosage, for a longer intervention period, may have shown significant changes
424 to these parameters. The glibenclamide intervention on the other hand
425 resulted in a general lowering of the elevated hyperlipidemia with moderate
426 to large effects sizes. Considering the mechanism by which these are
427 elevated during the diabetic state, the reduction in hyperglycemia due to the
428 glibenclamide induced increased insulin secretion, could have resulted in an
429 inhibition of lipase in the adipose tissue, hence, lowering the amount of FFA
430 released into the blood stream and the consequent cascade leading to the
431 production of the abnormal, diabetic, lipid profile (*38*).
432
433
434

CONCLUSIONS

Although not consistently so, many previous studies conducted in the same manner, using identically prepared extracts of other Aloe species, at similar dosages, have reported significant antidiabetic effects over shorter intervention periods. In our study, improvements were observed in end-point glucose, serum insulin, HDL-C and TC:HDL-C using *A. greatheadii* leaf gel extracts, in an STZ-induced diabetic rodent model. The *A. ferox* intervention also showed some positive effects, however, to a lesser extent compared to *A. greatheadii*. Although the intervention period used in this study was 1-2 weeks longer than most of those previously described and the dosages administered comparatively in the highest ranges, a longer intervention period and/or higher dosages of these particular Aloe extracts may have resulted in more significant results, especially when considering the changes observed in the end-point plasma glucose and serum insulin levels. Additionally, although the size of the groups chosen was similar to that of the other studies previously described, considering that a lack of statistical significance for many of the markers was accompanied by effect sizes indicating clinical relevance, larger sample sizes may have resulted in more pronounced effects, and studies of this nature in the future should take this into account. Furthermore, different extracts using other parts of these plants may also be considered for future antidiabetic intervention studies using *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii*.

458 **ABBREVIATIONS**

459

460 *A. ferox, Aloe ferox; A. greatheadii, Aloe greatheadii*; STZ,
461 streptozotocin; FRAP, ferric reducing antioxidant power; VLDL-C, very low-
462 density lipoprotein cholesterol; TC, total cholesterol; HDL-C, high-density
463 lipoprotein cholesterol; ALP, alkaline phophatase; *A. vera, Aloe vera; A.*
464 *arborescens, Aloe arborescens*; DC, STZ-induce diabetic control; DG, STZ-
465 induced diabetic rats receiving 600µg/kg glibenclamide; DAF, STZ-induced
466 diabetic rats receiving 300mg/kg *A. ferox*; DAG, STZ-induced diabetic rats
467 receiving 300mg/kg *A. graetheadii;* NC, normal control group; HOMA,
468 homeostasis model assessment; TG, triglycerides; HPO, horseradish
469 peroxide; LDL-C, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol; ALT, alanine
470 transaminase; dROM, diacron reactive metabolites; ANOVA, analysis of
471 variance; ANCOVA, analysis of co-variance; HSL, hormone sensitive lipase;
472 SREBPs, sterol regulatory element-binding proteins; FFA, free fatty acids;
473 AMPK, 5'adenosine monophosphate-activated protein-kinase; PPAR,
474 peroxisome proliferators-activated receptors; GLUT-4, glucose transporter-4;
475 ACAT, acyl-CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase; ATP, adenosine triphosphate;
476 AMP, adenosine monophosphate.

477

478

479

480

LITERATURE CITED

1. Vesudevan, AR.; and Garber, AJ. Insulin resistance syndrome. A review. *Min. Indocrinol.* **2005**, 30, 101-119.
2. Kaplan, JR.; and Wagner, JD. Type 2 diabetes – an introduction to the development and use of animal models. *ILAR J.* **2006**, 47(3), 181-185.
3. Murugesh, K., Yeligar, V., Dash, DK., Sengupta, P., Maiti, BC., Maity, TK., 2006. Antidiabetic, antioxidant and antihyperlipidemic status of *Heliotropium zeylanicum* extract on streptozotocin-induced diabetes in rats. *Biol. Pharmac. Bull.* **1985**, 29(11), 2202-2205.
4. Global Perspective on Non-communicable Disease Prevention and Control. [Web:] http://www.dh.gov.hk/english/pub_rec/pub_rec_ar/pdf/ncd/chap_3.pdf. Date of access: 23 Oct **2009**.
5. Ducorps, M.; Ndong, W.; Jupkwo, B.; Belmejdoub, G.; Thiolet, C.; Mayaudon, H.; Bauduceau, B. Diabetes in Cameroon. Classification difficulties in Africa. *Médecine tropicale : revue du Corps de santé colon.* **1996**, 56(3), 264-270.
6. Agarwal, OP. Prevention of atheromatous heart disease. *Angiology.* **1985**, 36, 485- 492.
7. Beppu, H.; Nagamura, Y.; Fujita, K. Hypoglycemic and antidiabetic effects in mice of *Aloe arborescens Miller var. natalensis Berger. Phytother. Res.* **1993**, 7, S37-S42.

504 8. Rajasekaran, S.; Sivagnaman, K.; Subramanian, S. Antioxidant effect of
505 *Aloe vera* gel extract in streptozotocin-induced diabetes in rats.
506 *Pharmacol. Rep.* **2005**, 57, 90-96.
507 9. Elliot, RB.; Wasmuth, H.; Hill, J.; Songini, M.; Bottazzo, GF. Diabetes
508 and cow's milk. Sardinian IDDM Study Group. *Lancet.* **1996**, 14, 348-
509 1657.
510 10. Botes, L.; Van Der Westhuizen, FH., Loots, Du T. Phytochemical
511 content and antioxidant capacities of two *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana*
512 extracts. *Molecules.* **2008**, 13, 2169-2180.
513 11. Loots, Du T.; Van Der Westhuizen, FH.; Botes, L. *Aloe ferox* leaf gel
514 phytochemical content, antioxidant capacity, and possible health
515 benefits. *J. Agric. Food. Chem.* **2007**, 55, 6891-6896.
516 12. Rajasekaran, S.; Sivagnanam, K.; Subramanian, S. Modulatory effects of
517 *Aloe vera* leaf gel extract on oxidative stress in rats treated with
518 streptozotocin. *J. Pharm. Pharmacol.* **2005**, 57, 241-246.
519 13. Szkudelski, T. The mechanism of alloxan and streptozotocin action in β-
520 cells of the rat pancreas. Physiological Research. **2001**, 50, 536-546.
521 14. Portha, B.; Giroix, MH.; Kergoat, M.; Bailbe, D.; Blondel, O.;
522 Serradas, P. Animal models of non-insulin-dependent diabetes
523 induced in the rat by experimental reduction of β cell mass. *J Annu*
524 *Diabetol Hotel Dieu.* **1988**, 33-36.
525 15. Benzie, IF.; and Strain, JJ. Feric reducing/antioxidant power assay:
526 direct measure of total antioxidant activity of biological fluids and

modified version for simultaneous measurement of total antioxidant power and ascorbic acid concentration. *Methods Enzymol.* **1999**, 299, 15-27.

16. Ellis, SM.; and Steyn, HS. Practical significance (effect sizes) versus or in combination with statistical significance (p-values). *Manag. Dyn.* **2003**, 2, 51-53.
17. Rosenthal, R.; Rosnow, RL.; Rubin, DB. Contrasts and effect sizes in behavioural research: a correlational approach. Cambridge : Cambridge University Press. **2000**, 212p.
18. Islam, MS.; and Loots, DT. Experimental rodent models of type 2 diabetes: A review. *Methods and Findings in Exp. Clin. Pharmacol.* **2009**, 31, 249-61.
19. Brownlee, M. The pathobiology of diabetic complications: a unifying mechanism. *Diabetes.* **2005**, 54, 1615-1625.
20. Grove, J.; Daly, AK.; Bassendine, MF.; Day, CP. Association of a tumor necrosis factor promoter polymorphism with susceptibility to alcoholic steatohepatitis. *Hepatol.* **1997**, 26, 143-146.
21. Neuschwander-Tetri, BA.; and Caldwell, S. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: summary of AASLD single tropic conference. *Hepatol.* **2003**, 37, 1202-1219.
22. Brownlee, M. A radical explanation for glucose-induced β cell dysfunction. *J Clin. Invest.* **2003**, 112(12), 1788-1790.

549 23. Burcelin, R.; Eddouks, M.; Maury, J.; Kande, J.; Assan, R.; Girard, J.
550 Excessive glucose production, rather than insulin resistance, accounts for
551 hyperglycemia in recent-onset streptozotocin-diabetic rats. *Diabetologia.*
552 **1995**, 38, 283-290.
553 24. Garcia-Compean, D.; Jaquez-Quintan, JO.; Maldonado-Gaza, H.
554 Hepatogenous diabetes. Current reviews of an ancient problem. *Ann.*
555 *Hepatol.* **2009**, 8, 13-20.
556 25. Satriano, J.; and Vallon, V. Primary kidney growth and its consequences
557 at the onset of diabetes mellitus. *Amino Acids*. **2006**, 31, 1-9.
558 26. Valentovic, MA.; Alejandro, N.; Carpenter, B.; Brown, A.; Ramos K.
559 Streptozotocin (STZ) diabetes enhances benzo(alpha)pyrene induced
560 renal injury in Spray Dawley rats. *Toxicol. Let.* **2006**, 164, 214-220.
561 27. Whiting, PH.; Bowley, M.; Struton, RG.; Pritchard, PH.; rindley,
562 DN.;Hawthorne, JN. The effect of chronic diabetes, induced by
563 streptozotocin, on activities of some enzymes of glycerolipid sythesis in
564 rat liver. *Biochem. J.* **1977**, 147-153.
565 28. Lugman, W.; Abdella, N.; Moro, M. Serum fructosamine concentration
566 as measure of blood glucose control in insulin dependent diabetes. *Br.*
567 *Med. J.* **1985**, 290, 1075-1076.
568 29. Rudderman, NB.; Cacicedo, JM.; Itani, S.; Yagihashi, N. Saha, AK.; Ye,
569 JM.; Chen, K.; Zou, M.; Carling, D.; Boden, G.; Cohen, RA.; Keaney, J.;
570 Kraegen, EW.; Ido, Y. Malonyl-CoA and AMP-activated protein kinase
571 (AMKP): possible links between insulin resistance in muscle and early

endothelial cell damage in diabetes. *Biochem. Soc. Transact.* **2003**, 31, 202-206.

30. Cha, SH.; Wolfgang, M.; Tokutake, Y.; Chohnan, S.; Lane, MD. Differential effects of central fructose and glucose on hypothalamic malonyl-CoA and food intake. *Proc. Nat. Ac. Sci. USA.* **2008**, 105, 16871-16875.
31. Sheng, X.; Zhang, Y.; Gong, Z.; Huang, C.; Zang, YQ. Improved insulin resistance and lipid metabolism by cinnamon extract through activation of peroxisome proliferators-activated receptors. *PPAR Res.* **2008**, 581348.
32. Zhang, W.; Xu, Y-C.; Guo, F-J.; Meng, Y.; Li, M-L. Anti-diabetic effects of cinnamaldehyde and berberine and their impacts on retinol-binding protein 4 expression in rats with diabetes mellitus. *Chin. Med. J.* **2008**, 121, 2124-2128.
33. Yang, Q.;Graham, TE.;Mody, N.;Preitner, F.; Peroniet, OD.; Zabolotny, JM.; Kotani, K.; Quadro, L.; Kahn, BB. Serum retinol binding protein 4 contributes to insulin resistance in obesity and type 2 diabetes. *Nature.* **2005**, 436, 356-362.
34. Jiao, S.; Matsuzawa, Y.; Matsubara, K.; Kihara, S.; Nakamura, T.; Tokunaga, K.; Kubo, M.; Tarui, S. Increased activity of intestinal acyl-CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase in rats with streptozotocin-induced diabetes and restoration with insulin supplementation. *Diabetes.* **1988**, 37, 342-346.

595 35. Kusunoki, J.; Aragane, K.; Kitamine, T.; Kozono, H.; Kano, K.;
596 Fujinami, K.; Kojima, K.; Chiwata, T.; Sekine, Y. Postprandial
597 Hyperlipidemia In Streptozotocin-Induced Diabetic Rats Is Due To
598 Abnormal Increase In Intestinal Acyl Coenzyme A:Cholesterol
599 Acyltransferase Activity. *Arterioscler. Throm. Vasc. Boil.* **2000**, 20, 171-
600 178.
601 36. Al-Shamaony, L.; Al-Khazraji, SM.; Twaiji, HAA.,; Hypoglycemic
602 effect of Artemisia herba alba. II. Effect of a valuable extract on some
603 blood parameters in diabetic animals. *J. Ethnopharm.* **1994**, 43, 167-
604 171.
605 37. Katcher, HI.; Hill, AM.; Lanford, JLG.; Yoo, JS.; Kris-Etherton, PM.
606 Lifestyle approaches and dietary strategies to lower LDL-Cholesterol
607 and triglycerides and raise HDL-Cholesterol. *Endocrinol. Metabol. Clin.*
608 *North America.* **2009**, 38, 45-78.
609 38. Krauss, RM. Lipids and Lipoproteins in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes.
610 *Diabetes Care.* **2004**, 27, 1496-1504.

Table 1. Body weight and relative organ weight.

	Normal control (n=10)		Diabetic control (n = 6)		Diabetic + Aloe greatbeadii (n = 7)		Diabetic + Aloe ferox (n = 7)		Diabetic + Glibenclamide (n = 7)		Comparison between groups (ANOVA)
Variables	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**P-value**
Weight (baseline) (g)	237.6	226.2; 249.0	226.0	209.2; 242.7	244.5	235.2; 253.8	253.2	221.6; 284.8	184.2	171.4; 197.0	
Weight (end) (g)	*[a]310.4	290.7; 330.2	231.6	217.1; 246.0	#234.8	212.6; 256.9	#[b]242.3	228.1; 256.5	#[b]205.8	186.6; 224.9	0.000
Δ Weight (g)	*[a]72.79	58.65; 86.93	5.63	-6.11; 17.38	#-9.70	-28.24; 8.84	#-10.91	-40.67; 18.84	#[b]21.61	11.53; 31.69	0.000
Weight (pancreas) (% body weight)	[b]0.29	0.26; 0.33	0.26	0.23; 0.30	0.26	0.24; 0.29	0.27	0.25; 0.29	#0.25	0.24; 0.26	0.029
Weight (liver) (% body weight)	*[a]2.47	2.37; 2.58	3.65	3.48; 3.83	#[b]3.88	3.50; 4.26	#3.82	3.39; 4.25	#*[a]4.10	3.95; 4.25	0.000
Weight (kindey) (% body weight)	*[a]0.66	0.63; 0.68	0.93	0.89; 0.96	#0.91	0.86; 0.97	#0.92	0.84; 1.00	#*[a]1.01	0.97; 1.06	0.000

*: Differs significantly from DC; #: Treatment groups which differ significantly from NC; a: effect size calculations indicating high practical significance compared to DC; b: Effect size calculations indicating medium practical significance compared to DC.

Table 2. Diabetic and antioxidant markers.

	Normal control (n=10)		Diabetic control (n = 6)		Diabetic + Aloe greatheadii (n = 7)		Diabetic + Aloe ferox (n = 7)		Diabetic + Glibenclamide (n = 7)		Comparison between groups (ANOVA)
Variables	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**Mean**	**95% CI**	**P-value**
Plasma glucose (mmol/L)	*[a]3.80	3.60; 4.00	20.07	17.74; 22.41	#[a]17.29	14.05; 20.53	#19.51	14.03; 24.99	*[a]4.90	3.71; 6.09	0.000
Baseline Glucose (mmol/L) – tail prick	4.27	3.43; 5.11	4.05	3.33; 4.77	3.77	3.41; 4.13	3.73	3.42; 4.04	4.02	3.16; 4.89	0.719
Serum insulin (uU/L)	*[a]17.45	11.66; 23.25	5.32	3.34; 7.31	#[b]9.15	3.76; 14.54	#[a]7.49	5.49; 9.49	[a]10.41	6.64; 14.18	0.001
Insulin resistance	[a]2.94	1.97; 3.91	5.14	2.16; 8.12	#[a]6.66	3.10; 10.23	#[b]6.31	3.98; 8.63	[a]2.30	1.68; 2.93	0.001
Fructosamine (µmol/L)	*[a]232.6	223.1; 242.0	296.9	282.9; 311.0	#296.1	287.2; 304.9	#306.5	284.8; 328.2	#*333.00	317.3; 348.7	0.000
ALP (U/L)	*[a]105.3	95.3; 115.4	1145.0	839.6; 1450.4	#*[a]874.3	757.2; 991.5	#[b]985.3	782.6; 1188.0	*[a]323.7	217.2; 430.2	0.000
ALT (U/L)	[a]74.55	57.22; 91.88	107.8	84.49; 131.0	117.3	84.81; 149.9	103.2	80.56; 125.8	#[b]131.2	90.7; 171.7	0.011
TC (mmol/L)	*[a]0.94	0.85; 1.02	1.67	1.22; 2.11	#1.82	1.28; 2.36	#1.86	1.55; 2.17	[a]1.28	0.91; 1.65	0.000
Trig (mmol/L)	*[a]0.76	0.65; 0.87	2.02	1.25; 2.80	#[b]2.77	1.59; 3.94	#1.93	1.22; 2.63	[b]1.58	1.29; 1.86	0.000
HDL-C (mmol/L)	[a]0.92	0.85; 0.98	1.11	0.87; 1.35	#[a]1.32	1.03; 1.61	#[b]1.26	0.99; 1.52	[b]1.000	0.87; 1.13	0.003
VLDL-C (mmol/L)	*[a]0.35	0.29; 0.40	0.92	0.57; 1.27	#[b]1.26	0.72; 1.79	#1.00	0.61; 1.38	[b]0.72	0.58; 0.85	0.000
TC:HDL-C (mmol/L)	*[a]1.02	0.97; 1.07	1.50	1.29; 1.72	#[b]1.36	1.16; 1.56	1.51	1.28; 1.74	#1.44	1.31; 1.56	0.000
dROM (CARR U)	376.9	321.4; 432.4	399.7	247.5; 551.9	379.5	299.3; 459.8	397.3	343.5; 451.2	[b]474.5	442.9; 506.1	0.149
FRAP	*[a]348.3	312.6; 384.0	285.7	265.3; 306.1	#293.1	246.5; 339.7	#279.6	249.6; 309.6	#300.86	248.9; 352.9	0.021

*: Differs significantly from DC; # : Treatment groups which differ significantly from NC; a: effect size calculations indicating high practical significance compared to DC; b: Effect size calculations indicating medium practical significance compared to DC.

Chapter 6

Discussion and Conclusion

1. INTRODUCTION

In this chapter the main findings of this study will be discussed and conclusions regarding these will be made. Additionally, the strengths, limitations and problems experienced will be discussed and recommendations for future research exploring the antidiabetic effects of *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* and *Aloe ferox* will be made.

The aim of the study was to investigate the potential antidiabetic effects of two *Aloe* species (*A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* var. *davyana*), indigenous to South Africa. The first objective was to determine and compare the phytochemical composition of the two different extracts of both *Aloe* species, in order to determine if these extracts contain any compounds which may justify further investigations of the antidiabetic effects in a diabetic animal model, and which extraction procedure extracts comparatively the most phytochemicals with previously described health benefits. Based on the comparative phytochemical composition and supported by the literature, the ethanol leaf gel extract was found most suitable for further investigations of the potential antidiabetic effects of these *Aloe* species by intragastric dosing in a STZ induced diabetic male Wistar rat model.

2. SUMMARY OF THE MAIN FINDINGS

Firstly, the phytochemical contents and antioxidant capacities of both *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* leaf gel (LGE) and 95% ethanol leaf gel extracts (ELGE) were identified, quantified and compared. This was accomplished using GCMS and spectrophotometric analyses. The identified phytochemicals with possible biological action in both *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* include polyphenols/phenolic acids, sterols, fatty acids, and indoles. Additionally, various other compounds including alkanes, pyrimidines, alkaloids, organic acids, aldehydes, dicarboxylic acids, ketones,

alcohols, and dicarboxylic acids, were also indentified. The ferric reducing antioxidant power (FRAP) and oxygen radical absorbance capacity (ORAC) analyses revealed strong antioxidant capacities of both *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* LGEs and 95% ELGEs. Furthermore, sugar determination revealed that the total sugar contents of the *Aloe* extracts were 5.43 g/100 g and 83.76 g/100 g for the *A. greatheadii* LGE and ELGE respectively, and 11.40 g/100 g and 96.91 g/100g for the *A. ferox* LGE and ELGE respectively. Of this, 36% vs. 40% (*A. greatheadii* vs. *A. ferox*) was quantified as glucose, 18% vs. 10.6% (*A. greatheadii* vs. *A. ferox*) as fructose and the remainder as maltose and sucrose.

A larger number of compounds were extracted with GC-MS analyses using direct leaf gel extract ethyl acetate/diethyl ether and hexane extractions compared to the same extraction method using ethanol leaf gel extract. Even so, when expressed as per dry mass, the concentrations of the compounds with known health benefits identified in the ethanol leaf gel extract were 1.20 to 1.25 times higher than the leaf gel extract. Additionally, antioxidant capacity analyses also showed higher activities in the ethanol leaf gel extract. This demonstrates that, even though the direct leaf gel extraction is best suited for general phytochemical characterization purposes, the use of ethanol leaf gel extract will be more effective in *in vivo* or *in vitro* biological efficacy and mechanistic studies (Loots *et al.*, 2007; Botes *et al.*, 2008).

Based on the above phytochemical compositions, the antidiabetic effects of the *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* ELGE were investigated in a STZ-induced diabetic rat model. Oral *A. greatheadii* supplementation resulted in moderately increased serum insulin together with modest decreased end-point plasma glucose and decreased liver enzyme alkaline phophatase (ALP) concentrations. Additionally, all lipids, including high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) increased, while total cholesterol (TC):HDL-C values decreased slightly in both treatment groups. *A. ferox* supplementation

resulted in moderately increased serum insulin, and slight corrections in ALP and low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C). No change was, however, observed in end-point plasma glucose for this intervention. Oral *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* supplementation, however, had little effect on other diabetes markers tested. Glibenclamide (as a positive control) resulted in significant improvements of almost all diabetic markers (increased insulin secretion, subsequent normalization of end-point blood glucose values and a correction of the diabetes induced hyperlipidaemia).

3. DISCUSSION AND CONCLUSIONS

Chapters 2, 3 and 4 provide the necessary information to interpret the results of the animal study (Chapter 5). The phytochemical analyses of *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* ethanol leaf gel extracts (chosen above that of the LGE for the later intervention studies due to the higher concentrations of biologically active compounds when quantified as per dry mass ELGE), as discussed in Chapters 3 and 4 (Loots *et al.,* 2007; Botes *et al.,* 2008), revealed a wide range of compounds with previously proven antidiabetic as well as antioxidant properties. Compared to *A. ferox*, *A. greatheadii* showed fever compounds in lower concentrations, with the exception of a few biologically active polyphenols. FRAP and ORAC analyses also revealed *A. greatheadii* ethanol leaf gel extract to have a lower antioxidant capacity than *A. ferox* ethanol leaf gel extract. However, the total flavanoid content of the *A. gratheadii* leaf gel extract showed greater antioxidant capacity as measured by ORAC analysis compared to *A. ferox* indicating that the flavanoids in *A. greatheadii* may have greater oxygen radical scavenging effects than ferric ion reducing potential.

A single intraperitoneal dose of STZ (40 mg/kg body weight) resulted in hyperglycaemia after seven days as a result of insulin deficiency due to the selective destruction of pancreatic β-cells (Islam & Loots, 2009).

Furthermore, due to the uncontrolled diabetic state demonstrated by the chronic end-point hyperglycaemia in the DC group compared to the NC group, an expected increase in fructosamine levels was observed (Chapter 5, Table 2) (Elliot *et al.*, 1996). Brownlee showed that chronic hyperglycaemia may result in oxidative stress (Brownlee, 2005). This may explain the slight increase in dROM values and significantly reduced FRAP values seen in this STZ diabetes model. The STZ diabetes model also presented with increased insulin resistance as well as increased fasting levels of TC, TG, HDL-C, VLDL-C and TC:HDL-C, which are also characteristic of these models (Islam & Loots, 2009). However, contrary to the expected decrease in HDL-C levels in the SZT diabetes animal model (Mitra *et al.*, 1995), the HDL-C levels increased in the DC compared to the NC group. The activation of hormone sensitive lipase (HSL) (Al-Shamaony *et al.*, 1994) may explain these increased lipid levels. The activation of HSL is triggered by insulin deficiency resulting in the release of free fatty acids from adipose tissue (Al-Shamaony *et al.*, 1994), which ultimately facilitates an increased synthesis of phospholipids and cholesterol in the liver. These phospholipids, together with the excess triglycerides, are released into the bloodstream as LDL-C and VLDL-C (Bopanna *et al.*, 1997).

The STZ diabetes model also showed considerably reduced weight gain, increased liver mass, increased kidney mass, and a decreased pancreatic mass, which is consistent to previous findings (Whiting *et al.*, 1977, Burcelin *et al.*, 1995, Garcia-Compean *et al.*, 2009, Satriano & Vallon, 2006, Satriano, 2007, Valentovic *et al.*, 2006, Brownlee, 2003). The decreased weight gain can be explained by reduced rates of lipogenesis as a result of reduced insulin levels (Freed *et al.*, 1988). Decreased hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal activity, partly caused by decreased leptin levels, may explain the reduced weight gain in the diabetic rats (Akirav *et al.*, 2004). The increased liver mass may partly be due to the formation of a fatty liver induced by hipoinsulunaemia as well as increased lipolysis of adipose tissue,

resulting in increased FFA and accumulation of these in the liver together with impaired exertion of these lipoproteins by the liver (Garcia-Compean *et al.,* 2009; Zafar *et al.,* 2009). The increased FFA, in combination with oxidative stress, may result in hepatocyte destruction, and hence, increase levels of ALT and ALP detected in the bloodstream (Neuschwander-Tetri & Caldwell, 2003, Grove *et al.*, 1997). The increased kidney mass can be explained by an increased glomerular filtration rate at the onset of diabetes (Satriano & Vallon, 2006), as well as a compensatory response by the kidneys to the increased load imparted by hyperfiltration (Satriano, 2007), which may also be associated with STZ-induced diabetes (Valentovic *et al.,* 2006). The loss in relative pancreatic mass can, of course, be explained by the STZ-induced β-cell destruction (Valentovic *et al.*, 2006, Brownlee, 2003).

The fact that glibenclamide, a typical type 2 diabetes medication, almost entirely normalized the diabetic state, indicates this STZ-diabetes model to be satisfactory for investigating non-insulin dependent diabetes, similar to what is seen in type 2 diabetes (except for investigations of insulin resistance, as will be discussed later).

Considering the role of oxidative stress in the development of various diseases, including diabetes, as well as the proven positive outcomes of antioxidants in these diseases, the use of these *Aloe* extracts, due to their high polyphenol contents and antioxidant capacities, could, therefore, be considered as a possible intervention for the hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress and related β-cell destruction which accompanies a diabetic state. Unfortunately the *Aloe* interventions used in this study showed no improvement in the oxidative stress markers during the 5 week intervention period. This may be due to the fact that the antioxidant polyphenols present in these extracts are absorbed from the gut with maximum concentration in the blood approximately 2 hours after ingestion (Kivits *et al.,* 1996; reviewed

by Scalbert & Williamson, 2000). The fact that fasting blood samples were analysed in this intervention (hence, blood collected long after ingestion of the *Aloe* extracts), means that the only antioxidant effects that one may measure are those due to the long term protective action of the absorbed polyphenols (i.e. protecting the pancreatic β-cells from further hyperglycaemia induced oxidative stress), and not due to the direct antioxidant capacity of the blood due to the presence of these compounds in the bloodstream at that moment in time.

Despite this, however, as described in Chapter 5, the *A. greatheadii* leaf gel extract intervention did result in a decreased hyperglycemic state when compared to the diabetic control group accompanied by increased insulin levels. The *A. ferox* intervention resulted in a similar insulin secretion effect, however, with no change to the hyperglycaemia. The slightly stronger antidiabetic action of *A. greatheadii* comparative to that of *A. ferox* can be explained by the higher concentrations of the potentially protective phytochemicals, including 4-hydroxybenzoic acid and 4 hydroxyphenyllactic, previously identified in this extract comparative to that of *A. ferox* (Chapters 3 and 4). A slight worsened insulin resistance was, however, observed following the *Aloe* intervetions, despite the increased insulin secretion and subsequent decrease in glucose levels. In addition, the fructosamine concentrations (an indicator of blood glucose control over a 21 day period (Lugman *et al.,* 1985) remained unchanged. Considering these results, *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii* may possibly improve hyperglycaemia induced by STZ diabetes, by increasing insulin secretion by the pancreatic β-cells. On the other hand, the worsened insulin resistance and unchanged fructosamine levels may indicate that a longer intervention period or higher dosages of the *Aloe* extracts may be required to improve chronic glucose levels. However, it has been shown that excessive glucose production rather than insulin resistance accounts for hyperglycemia in recent-onset STZ-diabetic rats (Burcelin *et al.,* 1995), hence, the calculation used for the determination of

insulin resistance as used in this instance, may not be appropriate for this particular model. This is supported by Islam and Loots (2009), who suggested that an STZ-diabetes model is not the best suited model for monitoring changes in insulin resistance. Other models should, therefore, be considered for more accurate investigations of this, e.g. a high fat diet fed diabetes model (Islam & Loots, 2009).

A. ferox and *A. greatheadii* interventions resulted in a non-significant general increase in the lipid markers. In the *A. greatheadii* group, the increased TC may largely be a result of increased HDL-C as can be seen in the decreased TC:HDL-C ratio. The generalized hyperlipidaemia seen in these groups may be due to increased fat absorption via the gut as a result of abnormally increased levels of small intestinal acyl-CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase (ACAT) activity (Jiao *et al.,* 1988). This increase is associated with insulin deficiency (Kusunoki *et al.,* 2000). Unfortunately the exact effect of insulin on ACAT is still unclear. Additionally, adjustment for weight change during the intervention affected only HDL-C levels. This may indicate that the increased HDL-C levels observed in the *Aloe* treatment groups may be related to the observed weight loss in these groups, as HDL-C has been shown to increase with weight reduction (Katcher *et al.,* 2007). From these results it is evident that although these *Aloe* interventions, at a dosage of 300 mg/kg for 5 weeks, which relates to 116.08 g/kg and 96.46 g/kg wet gel for AF and AG respectively, have some merit in restoring hyperglycemia through increased insulin secretion, they show little to no effect in restoring the hyperlipidemia associated with STZ induced diabetes. However, due to the fact that these extracts have been previously described to contain lipid lowering phytochemicals (Loots *et al.,* 2007; Botes *et al.,* 2008), it does beg the question as to whether a higher dosage, for a longer intervention period, may have shown significant changes to these parameters.

Overall, oral administration of the *Aloe* extracts, *A. greatheadii* in particular, resulted in moderate improvements in the STZ induced diabetic state, as evaluated by the measurement of various biochemical diabetes markers related to diabetes induced abnormalities including glucose, lipids, insulin and liver enzyme levels, justifying further investigations into the use of these traditional remedies for the treatment of diabetes.

4. STRENGTHS OF THE STUDY

- The topic addressed in this study is unique with regard to the *Aloe* species used. The possible antidiabetic effects of these *Aloe* species are extremely relevant to the local community, as it is already being used to treat diabetes, among other diseases, despite the limited existing scientific evidence. The extremely high prevalence of diabetes in South Africa further strengthens the investigation of possible antidiabetic effects of indigenous plants already used by local communities.
- The phytochemical characterization of the *Aloe* leaf gel extracts and ethanol leaf gel extracts preceding the animal study served as an important foundation for the animal study, as various antidiabetic and antioxidant components were identified during this analysis.
- The study was conducted over a five week period. This extends the duration of former studies using the same study design by an average of two weeks.
- A preliminary dose response study was done to determine exactly the amount of STZ needed to induce the desired diabetes animal model.

5. LIMITATIONS AND PROBLEMS EXPERIENCED IN THE STUDY

- Regular intragastric dosing and handling of the animals may have caused increased stress. This may be a possible explanation for the apparent augmentations in oxidative stress markers. Different dosing methods may have eliminated this possible confounding factor.
- The study was designed to investigate the chronic effects of *Aloe*. However, a different study design focusing on the immediate effects of the *Aloe* extracts may exert different effects.

6. RECOMMENDATIONS

Previous studies done using a variety of extracts from various other *Aloe* species, showed mixed results regarding antidiabetic action (Agarwal, 1985; Beppu *et al.,* 1993; Koo *et al.,* 1994; Bunyanpraphatsara *et al.,* 1996; Yongchaiyudha *et al.,* 1996; Lee *et al.,* 2000; Okyar *et al.,* 2001; Yagi *et al.,* 2002; Beppu *et al.*, 2003; Can *et al.*, 2004; Rajasekaran *et al.*, 2005a; Rajasekaran *et al.*, 2005b; Beppu *et al.,* 2006; Chandan *et al.,* 2007). The current study was designed using a similar design as those studies where significantly pronounced antidiabetic action was achieved (using other *Aloe* species of course). Hence, this study was conducted in the same manner, using identically prepared extracts, at comparatively the highest dosages reported, over a slightly longer duration. Although, in this study we observed improvements to end-point glucose, serum insulin, HDL-C and TC:HDL-C, using *A. greatheadii* leaf gel extracts, and the same positive trend for the *A. ferox* intervention (however, to a lesser extent), we feel that a longer intervention period and/or higher dosages of these particular *Aloe* extracts may have resulted in more significant results, especially when considering the changes we observed in the end-point plasma glucose and serum insulin levels. Additionally, although the size of the groups chosen was similar to

that of the other studies previously described, considering that a lack of statistical significance for many of the markers was accompanied by effect sizes indicating clinical relevance, larger sample sizes may have resulted in more pronounced effects, and studies of this nature in the future should take this into account. Furthermore, different extracts using other parts of these plants may also be considered for future antidiabetic intervention studies using *A. ferox* and *A. greatheadii.* Additionally, as previously mentioned, the total sugar/glucose contents of these extracts may be of concern, especially when considering using these extracts in the context of a diabetes intervention, as carbohydrate intake is considered a major factor in glycaemic control. Nielsen and Jonsson (2006) reported that a low carbohydrate diet, containing 20 % carbohydrates, is superior to a diet containing 55 - 60 % carbohydrates, with regards to controlling body weight, blood glucose levels and reducing HbA_{1c}. The American Diabetes Association (ADA) defines a low carbohydrate diet as less than 130 g/d or 26 % of a nominal 2,000 kcal (8400 kJ) diet (American Diabetes Association, 2002). Considering the above-mentioned recommended carbohydrate intakes for diabetics and the mechanisms by which the pholyphenols and phytosterols elicit their anti-diabetic actions (by lowering glucose absorption and protecting pancreatic β-cells from oxidative destruction), the sugar contents of these extracts may not necessarily be problematic due to the small amounts that would be additionally ingested during an intervention using these extracts. This, however, should be investigated, in addition to other methods of extraction which could potentially eliminate these sugars.

Finally, oral dosing via gastric gavage may have caused excessive stress to the rats. Other methods such as training the rats to drink from a syringe (Rouke & Pemberton, GSK research and development) or dosing through an automated pre-programmed infusion pump (Woods *et al.,* 2009) may be more favourable dosing methods.

7. LITERATURE CITED

AGARWAL O.P. 1985. Prevention of atheromatous heart disease. *Angiology,* 36:485-492.

AKIRAV E.M. CHAN O., INOUYE K., RIDDELL M.C., MATTHEWS S.G., VRANIC M. 2004. Partial leptin restoration increases hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal activity while diminishing weight loss and hyperphagia in streptozotocin diabetic rats. *Metabolism.* 53, 1558-1564.

AL-SHAMAONY L., AL-KHAZRAJI S.M., TWAIJI H.A.A. 1994. Hypoglycemic effect of Artemisia herba alba. II. Effect of a valuable extract on some blood parameters in diabetic animals. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 43, 167-171.

AMERICAN DIABETES ASSICIATION. 2002. Standards of medical care for patients with diabetes. *Diabetes care,* 25 (Suppl.1):S33-S49.

BEPPU H., NAKAMURA Y., FUJITA K. 1993. Hypoglycemic and antidiabetic effects in mice of *Aloe* arborescens Miller var. natalensis Berger. *Phytotherapy research,* 7:S37-S42.

BEPPU H., KOIKE T., SHIMPO K., CHIHARA T., HOSHINO M., ISA C., KUZUYA H. 2003.. Radical-scavenging affects of *Aloe* arborescens miller on prevention of pancreatic β-cell destruction in rats. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 89:37-45.

BEPPU H., SHIMPO K., CHIHARA T., KANEKO T., TAMAI I., YAMAJI S., OZAKI S., KUZUYA H., SONODA S. 2006. Anti-diabetic effects of dietary administration of *Aloe* arborescens miller components on multiple low-dose streptozotocin-induced diabetes in mice: Investigation on hypoglycemic action and systemic absorption dynamics of *aloe* components. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 103:468-477.

BOPANNA K.N., KANNAN J., SUSHMA G., BALARAMAN R., RATHOD S.P. 1997. Antidiabetic and antihyperlipidemic effects of neem seed kernel powder on alloxan diabetic rabbits. *Indian journal of pharmacology,* 9, 162-167.

BOTES L., PIETERS M., ISLAM M.D.S., LOOTS DU T. 2008. Antidiabetic effects of *Aloe ferox* and *Aloe greatheadii* var. *davyana* leaf gel extracts in a streptozotocin diabetes rat model. *Journal of agricultural and food chemistry.* In review

BROWNLEE M. 2003. A radical explanation for glucose-induced β cell dysfunction. *Journal of clinical investigation*, 112(12), 1788-1790.

BROWNLEE M. 2005. The pathobiology of diabetic complications: a unifying mechanism. *Diabetes,* 54:1615-1625.

BURCELIN R., EDDOUKS M, MAURY J., KANDE J., ASSAN R., GIRARD J. 1995. Excessive glucose production, rather than insulin resistance, accounts for hyperglycemia in recent-onset streptozotocin-diabetic rats. *Diabetologia,* 38:283-290.

BUNYAPRAPHATSARA N., YONGCHAIYUDHA S., RUNGPITARANGSI V., CHOKECHAIJAROENPORN O. 1996. Anti-diabetic activity of *Aloe vera* L. juice. II. Clinical trial in diabetes mellitus patients in combination with glibenclamide. *Phytomedicine,* 3:245-248.

CAN A., AKEV N., OZSOY N., BOLKENT S., ARDA B.P., YANARDAG R., OKYAR A. 2004. Effect of *Aloe vera* leaf gel and pulp extracts on the liver in type-II diabetic rat models. *Biological and pharmaceutical bulletin,* 27(5):694-698.

CHANDAN B.K., SAXENA A.K., SHUKLA S., SHARMA N., GUPTA D.K., SURI K.A., SURI J., BHADAURIA M., SINGH B. 2007. Hepatoprotective potential of *Aloe barbadensis* Mill. Against carbon tetrachloride induced hepatotoxicity. *Journal of ethnopharmacology,* 111:560–566.

ELLIOT R.B., WASMUTH H., HILL J., SONGINI M., BOTTAZZO G.F. 1996. Diabetes and cow's milk. Sardinian IDDM Study Group. *Lancet,* 14:348-1657.

FREED L.E., ENDEMANN G., TOMERA J.F., GAVINO V.C., BRUNENGRABER H. 1988. Lipogenesis from ketone bodies in perfused livers od streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Diabetes,* 37(1):50-55.

GARCIA-COMPEAN D., JAQUEZ-QUINTAN J.O., MALDONADO-GAZA H. 2009. Hepatogenous diabetes. Current reviews of an ancient problem. *Annals in hepatology,* 8:13-20.

GROVE J., DALY A.K., BASSENDINE M.F., DAY C.P. 1997. Association of a tumor necrosis factor promoter polymorphism with susceptibility to alcoholic steatohepatitis. *Hepatology,* 26, 143-146.

ISLAM M.S AND LOOTS D.T. 2009. Experimental rodent models of type 2 diabetes: A review. *Methods and findings in experimental and clinical pharmacology,* 31:249-61.

JIAO S., MATSUZAWA Y., MATSUBARA K., KIHARA S., NAKAMURA T., TOKUNAGA K., KUBO M., TARUI S. 1988. Increased activity of intestinal acyl-CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase in rats with streptozotocin-induced diabetes and restoration with insulin supplementation. *Diabetes,* 37:342-346.

KATCHER H.I., HILL A.M., LANFORD J.L.G., YOO J.S., KRIS-ETHERTON P.M. 2007. Lifestyle approaches and dietary strategies to lower LDL-Cholesterol and triglycerides and raise HDL-Cholesterol. *Endocrinology and metabolism clinics of North America,* 38: 45-78.

KIVITS G.A.A., VAN DER SMAN F.J.P., TIJBURG L.B.M. 1996. Analysis of catechins from green and black tea in humans: a specific and sensitive colorimetric assay of total catechins in biological fluids. *International journal of food science and nutrition,* 48:387-392.

KOO M.W.L. 1994. *Aloe vera.* Anti-ulcer and anti-diabetic effects. *Phytotherapy research,* 8:461-464.

KUSUNOKI J., ARAGANE K., KITAMINE T., KOZONO H., KANO K., FUJINAMI K., KOJIMA K., CHIWATA T., SEKINE Y. 2000. Postprandial Hyperlipidemia In Streptozotocin-Induced Diabetic Rats Is Due To Abnormal Increase In Intestinal Acyl Coenzyme A:Cholesterol

Acyltransferase Activity. *Arteriosclerosis thrombosis and vascular biology,* 20:171-178.

LEE K.Y., WEINTRAUB S.T., YU B.P. 2000. Isolation and identification of a phenolic antioxidant from *Aloe barbadensis. Free radical biology and medicine,* 28:261-265.

LOOTS DU T., VAN DER WESTHUIZEN F.H., BOTES L. 2007. *Aloe ferox* leaf gel phytochemical content, antioxidant capacity, and possible health benefits. *Journal of agricultural food chemistry,* 55:6891-6896.

LUGMAN W., ABDELLA N., MORO M. 1985. Serum fructosamine concentration as measure of blood glucose control in insulin dependent diabetes. *British medical journal,* 290:1075-1076.

MITRA S.K., GOPUMADHAVAN S., MURALIDHAR T.S., ANTURLIKAR S.D., SUJATHA M.B. 1995. Effect of D-400, a herbomineral preparation on lipid profile, glycated haemoglobin and glucose tolerance in streptozotocin induced diabetes in rats. *Indian journal of experimental biology,* 33(10):798-800.

NEUSCHWANDER-TETRI B.A AND CALDWELL S. 2003. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: summary of AASLD single tropic conference. *Hepatology,* 37, 1202-1219.

NIELSEN J.V AND JÖNSSON E.A. 2006. Low-carbohydrate diet in type 2 diabetes. Stable improvement of body weight and glycaemic control during 22 months follow-up. *Nutrition and metabolism (Lond),* 3(22):1-5.

OKYAR A., CAN A., AKEV N., BAKTIR G., SÜTLÜPINAR N. 2001. Effect of *Aloe vera* leaves on blood glucose level in type I and type II diabetic rat models. *Phytotherapy research,* 15:157-161.

RAJASEKARAN S., SIVAGNANAM K., SUBRAMANIAN S. 2005a. Modulatory effects of *aloe vera* leaf gel extract on oxidative stress in rats treated with streptozotocin. *Journal of pharmacy and pharmacology,* 57:241-246.

RAJASEKARAN S., SIVAGNAMAN K., SUBRAMANIAN S. 2005b. Antioxidant effect of *Aloe vera* gel extract in streptozotocin-induced diabetes in rats. *Pharmacological reports,* 57:90-96.

SATRIANO J AND VALLON V. 2006. Primary kidney growth and its consequences at the onset of diabetes mellitus. *Amino acids,* 31, 1-9.

SATRIANO J. 2007. Kidney growth and the unifying mechanism of diabetic complications. *Amino acids,* 33, 331-339.

SCALBERT A AND WILLAMSON G. 2000. Dietary Intake and Bioavailability of Polyphenols. *Journal of nutrition*, 130:2073S-2085S.

VALENTOVIC M.A., ALEJANDRO N., CARPENTER B., BROWN A., RAMOS K. 2006. Streptozotocin (STZ) diabetes enhances benzo(alpha)pyrene induced renal injury in Spray Dawley rats. *Toxicology letters,* 164, 214-220.

WHITING P.H., BOWLEY M., STRUTON R.G., PRITCHARD P.H., BRINDLEY D.N., HAWTHORNE J.N. 1977. The effect of chronic diabetes, induced by streptozotocin, on activities of some enzymes of glycerolipid sythesis in rat liver. *Biochemical journal*, 168, 147-153.

YAGI A., KABASH A., OKAMURA N., HARAGUCHI H., MOUSTAFA S.M., KHALIFA T.I. 2002. Antioxidant, free radical scavenging and anti-inflammatory effects of aloesin derivatives in *Aloe vera*. *Planta medica,* 68:957-960.

YONGCHAIYUDHA S., RUNGPITARANGSI V., BUNYAPRAPHATSARA N. CHOKECHAIJAROENPORN O. 1996. Antidiabetic activity of *aloe vera* L. juice. I. Clinical trial in new diabetes mellitus. *Phytomedicine,* 3:241-234.

ZAFAR M., NAQVI S.N., AHMEND M., KAIMKHANI Z.A. 2009. Altered liver morphology and enzymes in streptozotocin induced diabetic rats. *International journal of morphology,* 27(3):719-725.

Addendum

Scope, Policy, and Instructions for Authors

(Revised January 2009)

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts **must** be submitted via the web using the Paragon Plus Environment (http://paragonplus.acs.org). The site's security features limit access to a manuscript to those Editors and reviewers to whom that manuscript is assigned. If coauthors' e-mail and contract information are entered during the submission process, they will be able to track the progress of the manuscript on their own Paragon Plus Web pages; however, communications from the editorial offices will be limited to the corresponding author. Authors must also submit revised manuscripts via the ACS Paragon Plus Environment.

E-mailed submissions and hardcopy submissions will not be processed.

All manuscripts **must** be accompanied by a cover letter that includes seven specific points:

1. Manuscript title
2. Corresponding author's name, address, telephone and fax numbers, and e-mail address
3. If manuscript is not submitted by the corresponding author, submitter's name, address, telephone and fax numbers, and e-mail address
4. Provide e-mail addresses of all coauthors
5. **Explanation of the manuscript's significance, including its originality, its contribution to new knowledge in the field, and its relevance to research in agricultural and food chemistry**
6. List of graphics the author would like to have published in color
7. **List of at least four recommended reviewers** for the manuscript; include the address, telephone and fax numbers, and e-mail address for each suggested reviewer; **do not include reviewers who may have a conflict of interest or who are Associate Editors of the *Journal*.** The recommended reviewers should not be anyone who is or, in the previous two years, has been a former adviser/advisee, colleague in the same institution, research collaborator, and/or coauthors of papers and patents.

Submissions that do not include a cover letter addressing these seven points will not be processed.

The author's preference for manuscript category is indicated during the submission process. However, the final decision on the category under which the manuscript will be listed lies with the Editor.

Complete instructions for manuscript preparation and a copyright status form are available at the *Journal's* Website and are also printed in the first issue of each volume. Please conform to these instructions when submitting manuscripts.

Authors whose manuscripts are published in the *Journal* will be expected to review manuscripts submitted by other researchers from time to time.

JOURNAL SCOPE

The *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* publishes complete or full-length fundamental and applied research papers dealing with the chemistry and biochemistry of agriculture and food. The *Journal* also encourages papers with chemistry and/or biochemistry as a major component combined with biological/sensory/nutritional/toxicological evaluation related to agriculture and/or food.

The *Journal* is organized into the following sections:

Analytical Methods
Bioactive Constituents
Biofuels and Bioproducts Chemistry
Chemical Aspects of Biotechnology/Molecular Biology
Chemical Aspects of Food Safety
Chemical Changes Induced by Processing/Storage
Chemical Composition of Foods/Feeds
Crop and Animal Protection Chemistry
Environmental Chemistry
Flavors and Aromas/Chemosensory Perception
Food Chemistry/Biochemistry
Molecular Nutrition
Toxicology in Agriculture and Food

MANUSCRIPT TYPES

Research articles must report *original research that is expected to have a definable impact on the advancement of science and technology, incorporating a significant component of innovative chemistry.* Originality will be documented by novel experimental results, theoretical treatments, interpretations of data, and absence of prior publications on the same/similar topics.

Expedited Handling. There is no separate Rapid Communications, Notes, or Letters section. However, manuscripts describing results deemed to be highly important and urgent in a field of research will be considered for expedited processing and review. **Only manuscripts reporting complete research, as opposed to preliminary results, will be considered.** A request for expedited handling, along with justification for the request, must be included in the cover letter accompanying the manuscript.

Review articles will be considered that summarize information in a field in which the literature is scattered or treat published data or other information so as to provide a new approach or stimulate further research. Authors considering the preparation of a review **should submit a synopsis to the Editor** to establish whether the manuscript will meet these guidelines.

Perspectives, which explore needs and opportunities in agricultural and food chemistry in a less technical format than a review article, will be considered. Authors should **contact the Editor** to outline the area to be covered before submitting a Perspectives manuscript. For an example, see *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2008**, *56*, 7587–7592.

Comments related to published papers will be considered from readers if the correspondence is **received within six months of the date of publication of the original paper**; the authors of the original paper will be given the **opportunity to reply** to such comments within two months, if they so desire. Both comments and replies should not exceed 1000 words each, including citations, and will be published consecutively in the same issue of the *Journal* after peer review. For examples, see *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2007**, *55*, 7213–7214 and *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2007**, *55*, 7215–7216.

Symposia or Topical Collections. The Editor will consider publication of a series of manuscripts reporting or synthesizing original research that are presented in a symposium or otherwise clustered around a single topic. Prospective organizers should **contact the Editor well in advance** to determine whether the subject matter conforms to the *Journal's* goals, criteria, and available space and to obtain specific instructions for submission of the manuscripts. For an example, see *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2008**, *56*, 5983–6184. Each manuscript will be put through the normal peer-review process.

Additions/Corrections. Corresponding authors wishing to submit a correction to a paper already published in print should submit the item via the Paragon Plus Website. In your cover letter, include the manuscript number of the paper to be cor-

rected. In the correction document, include the full title of the original publication, all author names, the volume and page numbers of the print publication, the original manuscript number, and a brief description of the correction(s) needed. If a figure is to be corrected, please include the figure in the correction document. Please note that the Editor has final approval as to whether an addition/correction will be published.

ETHICS, CONFLICT OF INTEREST

Authors and coauthors are responsible for the integrity of their manuscripts. The Editor may impose a 2 year submission moratorium on authors and coauthors that are found to be in violation of the ethical guidelines.

Authors and coauthors should familiarize themselved by reading the entire *Ethical Guidelines to Publication of Chemical Research*, which are available at the *Journal's* Website and are also published in the first issue each year.

Some particularly important points from the ACS Ethical Guidelines are the following:

Multiple Reporting of Research. It is improper for an author to submit manuscripts describing essentially the same research to more than one journal. Resubmission of a manuscript rejected or withdrawn from publication is permissible. Authors are expected to use care when submitting reports of research previously presented at meetings so that double publication does not occur. This applies to figures and tables as well as text. Publication of research in non-English journals constitutes prior publication. (For a discussion of copyright issues related to the use of tables, figures, or text that are published elsewhere, see *The ACS Style Guide*, 3rd ed., Chapter 7.)

Plagiarism. The Editors of this journal will not tolerate plagiarism, including self-plagiarism. Authors should refer to a handbook such as the *Modern Language Association Handbook for Writers of Research Papers*, 6th edition, for a full explanation of plagiarism and how to avoid it. Another good source of information is the Website http://www.plagiarism.org.

Coauthorship. The submitting author must obtain consent to coauthorship from all coauthors listed prior to submitting the manuscript and include as coauthors all individuals who made significant scientific contributions to the work. Any disagreement between the corresponding author and coauthors after the manuscript is submitted will cause review of the manuscript to cease. It is the responsibility of the authors to settle disputes that arise before or after the manuscript is submitted without involving the Editor/Associate Editor or ACS. (For a discussion of coauthorship, see *The ACS Style Guide*, 3rd ed., Chapter 1.)

Conflict of Interest. The authors should disclose at the time of submission any financial arrangement they may have with a company whose product figures prominently in the submitted manuscript or with a company making a competing product. An editorial decision will then be made as to whether the manuscript being submitted should be sent out for review. If the paper is deemed to be suitable for review, information concerning any financial arrangement the authors may have with a given company will be held in confidence and will not influence the evaluation of the research and whether the manuscript can be accepted for publication. As a guiding principle, however, it is expected that the authors of such papers should not have any financial interest in a company (or its competitor) that makes a product discussed in the paper. These guidelines do not generally apply to the use of brand names or to the identification of the producers of products that are used for analytical purposes such as instruments, reagents, or kits. For further information, please read the *ACS Ethical Guidelines to Publications of Chemical Research*, section B12, which is available at the *Journal's* Website.

EDITORIAL PEER REVIEW PROCESS

Peer review is used to help ensure the **highest possible quality** in published manuscripts. For a discussion of this, see "The Importance of Peer Review" by H. L. Wheeler and W. B. Wheeler, *J. Agric. Food Chem.* (Editorial) **2006**, *54*, 8983−8983. Scientists with expertise in the subject matter being treated will evaluate the manuscript for validity of the experimental design and results, originality, significance, and appropriateness to the *Journal*. **The Editors may exercise their prerogative to decline a manuscript without peer review if that paper is judged to be outside the scope of the *Journal* (lacks significant chemistry/biochemistry), poorly written or formatted, fragmentary and marginally incremental, or lacking in significance.** Manuscripts describing properties of extracts, without detailing the chemical composition of the extracts responsible for the described properties, will generally not be accepted for review.

All manuscripts submitted are reviewed and handled by the Editor-in-Chief or assigned to one of the Associate Editors. The Associate Editor and local Editorial Assistant are then responsible for the assigned manuscripts, including acknowledging receipt, evaluating the content and format of the paper, selecting reviewers, monitoring the progress of the review process, evaluating the comments of reviewers and forwarding them to the authors for their response, communicating ultimate acceptance or rejection to the corresponding authors, and carrying out a final check of accepted manuscripts for appropriate format and style.

Typically, three reviewers are selected per paper on the basis of the subject matter, available expertise, and the Editor's knowledge of the field. Potential reviewers for each paper are identified by various means, including a computerized search of the subject area. Authors must submit the names and addresses (including e-mail addresses and fax numbers) of at least four potential reviewers; however, the Editors are under no obligation to use specific individuals. Reviewers are normally asked to provide their assessments within two to three weeks. Anonymous copies of the reviews and the Editor's decision regarding the acceptability of the manuscript are sent to the corresponding author. If the reviewers' evaluations of the manuscript disagree, or if reviewer's and Editor's comments are not satisfactorily addressed by the authors, the Editor may reject the manuscript or select additional reviewers. These additional reviews are used by the Editor to assist in reaching the final decision regarding disposition of the manuscript.

The obligations of the Editors and Reviewers are outlined in the *Ethical Guidelines*. Aids for reviewers titled "A Guide to a Review" and "Components of a Manuscript to be Considered in a Review" are available at the Reviewer Information Website.

Documents accepted for publication will be **posted on the *Journal's* ASAP Website** as soon as they are ready for publication, that is, when the author's galley proof corrections have been made and all author concerns are resolved. This can occur anywhere from 2 to 8 weeks in advance of the cover date of the printed issue. Authors should take this into account when planning their intellectual and patent activities related to a document. The actual date on which the document is posted on the web is recorded in a separate line at the bottom of the first page of the document in the issue.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

Manuscript Format. Manuscripts must be prepared using accepted word-processing software, and all parts must be double-spaced. All pages must be numbered consecutively

starting with the title page and including tables and figures. **Lines in the abstract and text should be numbered consecutively from beginning to end in a separate column at the left. Do not put line numbers on pages with tables.** A standard font, in a size of 12 points or greater, must be used. The *Journal* requires authors to stay within a **20 typed page limit**, not including references, tables, and figures.

Standard American English usage is required. Authors who are not familiar with standard American English are urged to seek assistance; deficiencies in grammar may be a serious hindrance during the review process.

The ACS Style Guide (3rd ed., 2006; ISBN 0-8412-3999-1), available from Oxford University Press, Order Department, 201 Evans Road, Cary, NC 27513, provides a detailed treatment of the fundamentals of manuscript preparation. Refer to a current issue of the *Journal* for general style.

The various sections of the manuscript should be assembled in the following sequence:

Title and authorship (single page)
Abstract and keywords (single page)
Introduction
Materials and Methods
Results
Discussion
Abbreviations Used
Safety
Acknowledgment
Supporting Information description
Literature Cited
Figure captions
Tables
Figures
Graphic for table of contents (optional)

TITLE AND AUTHORSHIP

The title, authorship, and institutional affiliations should be included on a single page.

Title. The title should be specific and informative. Keywords in the title assist in effective literature retrieval. If a plant is referred to in the title or elsewhere in the text by its common or trivial name, it should be identified by its scientific name in parentheses immediately following its first occurrence. This term should also be provided as one of the keywords. If trade names are mentioned, give generic names in parentheses.

Authorship. Be consistent in authorship designation on the manuscript and on all correspondence. **First name, middle initial, and last name** are generally adequate for correct identification, but omit titles. Give the complete mailing address of all institutions where work was conducted and identify the affiliation of each author. If the current address of an author is different, include it in a footnote on the title page. The name of the author to whom inquiries about the paper should be addressed must be marked with an asterisk; provide the telephone and fax numbers and e-mail address of this correspondent.

ABSTRACT AND KEYWORDS

Abstract. Authors' abstracts are used directly for *Chemical Abstracts*. The abstract should be a clear, concise (100–150 words), one-paragraph summary, informative rather than descriptive, giving scope and purpose, experimental approach, significant results, and major conclusions. Write for literature searchers as well as journal readers.

Keywords. Provide significant keywords to aid the reader in literature retrieval. The keywords are published immediately before the text, following the abstract.

INTRODUCTION

Discuss relationships of the study to previously published work, but do not reiterate or attempt to provide a complete literature survey. Use of Chemical Abstracts and other appropriate databases is encouraged to ensure that important prior publications or patents are cited and that the manuscript does not duplicate previously published work. **The purpose or reason for the research being reported, and its significance, originality, or contribution to new knowledge in the field, should be clearly and concisely stated.**

Do not include or summarize current findings in this section.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Apparatus, reagents, and biological materials used in the study should be incorporated into a general section. List devices of a specialized nature or instruments that may vary in performance, such that the model used may affect the quality of the data obtained (e.g., spectroscopic resolution).

List and describe preparation of special reagents only. Reagents normally found in the laboratory and preparations described in standard handbooks or texts should not be listed.

Specify the source, vendor [city and state (or city and country if non-U.S.)], and availability of special equipment, reagents, kits, etc. Do not include catalog numbers.

Biological materials should be identified by scientific name (genus, species, authority, and family) and cultivar, if appropriate, together with the site from which the samples were obtained. Specimens obtained from a natural habitat should be preserved by deposit of samples in an herbarium for plants or in a culture collection for microorganisms, with a corresponding collection or strain number listed.

Manuscripts describing studies in which live animals or human subjects are used must include a statement that such experiments were performed in compliance with the appropriate laws and institutional guidelines, and **also name the institutional committee that approved the experiments** (see Reporting Specific Data: Animal or Human Studies). Manuscripts reporting data from inhumane treatment of experimental animals will be rejected.

Specific experimental methods should be sufficiently detailed for others to repeat the experiments unequivocally. Omit details of procedures that are common knowledge to those in the field. Brief highlights of published procedures may be included, but details must be left to the Literature Cited, and verbatim repeat of previously published methods, even if done by the authors, will not be permitted unless a quotation from a published work is included, and placed in quotation marks, with the reference to the source included at the end of the quotation. Describe pertinent and critical factors involved in reactions so the method can be reproduced, but avoid excessive description. For information on the reporting of certain types of data see Reporting Specific Data.

Describe statistical design and methods in this section.

RESULTS/DISCUSSION

Results and discussion may be presented in separate sections or combined into a single section, whichever format conveys the results in the most lucid fashion. Be complete but concise in discussing findings, comparing results with previous work and proposing explanations for the results observed.

All data must be accompanied by appropriate statistical analyses, including complete information on sampling, replication, and how the statistical method employed was chosen.

Avoid comparisons or contrasts that are not pertinent, and avoid speculation unsupported by the data obtained.

A separate summary or conclusion section is not to be used; any concluding statements are to be incorporated under Results and Discussion.

ABBREVIATIONS AND NOMENCLATURE

Standard abbreviations, without periods, should be used throughout the manuscript.

Refer to *The ACS Style Guide* for the preferred forms of commonly used abbreviations. Specialized abbreviations may be used provided they are placed in parentheses after the word(s) for which they are to substitute at first point of use and are again defined in this section. Avoid trivial names and "code" abbreviations (e.g., NAR for naringenin) unless such codes are in common usage (e.g., MTBE for methyl *tert*-butyl ether).

If trade names are used, define at point of first use. If nomenclature is specialized, include a "Nomenclature" section at the end of the paper, giving definitions and dimensions for all terms. Use SI units insofar as possible. Refer to *The ACS Style Guide* for lists of SI units and a discussion of their use.

Write all equations and formulas clearly and number equations consecutively. Place superscripts and subscripts accurately; avoid superscripts that may be confused with exponents. Identify typed letters and numbers that might be misinterpreted, such as "oh" for zero or "ell" for one. Chemistry numbering requiring primes should be identified as such, not by a comma; e.g. 3,3'-hydroxy- .

It is the authors' responsibility to provide correct nomenclature. Structures should be included for uncommon chemicals, particularly when the systematic or common name is too complex or unclear to readily denote the structure. Such structures should be included as a figure or table. All nomenclature must be consistent and unambiguous and should conform with current American usage. Insofar as possible, authors should use systematic names similar to those used by Chemical Abstracts Service, the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry, and the International Union of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology. Chemical Abstracts (CA) nomenclature rules are described in Appendix IV of the *Chemical Abstracts Index Guide*. For CA nomenclature advice, consult the Manager of Nomenclature Services, Chemical Abstracts Service, P.O. Box 3012, Columbus, OH 43210-0012. A name generation service is available for a fee through CAS Client Services, 2540 Olentangy River Road, P.O. Box 3343, Columbus, OH 43210-0334 [telephone (614) 447-3870; fax (614) 447-3747; e-mail answers@cas.org]. In addition, the ACS Website has links to nomenclature recommendations at http://chemistry.org.

SAFETY

Authors are required to call special attention in their manuscripts to safety considerations such as explosive tendencies, special precautionary handling procedures, and toxicity.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Include essential credits but hold to an absolute minimum. Omit academic and social titles. Meeting presentation data and acknowledgment of financial support of the work should not be included here; give these instead in a note following the Literature Cited. It is the responsibility of the corresponding author to notify individuals named in the Acknowledgment section.

LITERATURE CITED

Consult *The ACS Style Guide* and current issues of the *Journal* for examples of reference format.

Authors should cite all prior published work directly pertinent to the manuscript. However, extensive bibliographies that go beyond a direct connection with the manuscript are discouraged. Prior work can often be covered by citation of a few leading references or of review articles. As a general guideline, authors should attempt to limit the literature cited to approximately 30 or fewer citations.

Authors are responsible for the accuracy of their references. References taken from a review or other secondary source should be checked for accuracy with the primary source.

References should be listed on a separate sheet and numbered in the order in which they are cited in the text. References should be cited in the text by an on-line italic number in parentheses, for example, (*1*), (*2–5*), etc.

Give complete information, using the last name and initials of the author, patentee, or equivalent; do not use "Anonymous".

Follow *Chemical Abstracts Service Source Index* for abbreviations of journal titles. Because subscribers to the Web edition of the *Journal* are now able to click on the "Chemport" or other tag following each reference to retrieve the corresponding abstract from various Web resources, reference accuracy is critical.

Typical references follow the styles given below.

For journals:

1. Brown, J.; Jones, M.; Green, D. Article title. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **1980**, *28*, 1–4. (Use issue number only if each issue of the periodical begins with page 1.)

For books:

2. Smith, L; Caldwell, A. Chapter title. In *Book Title*, edition no.; Keys, F., Park, G., Eds.; Publisher: City, State (or Country if non-U.S.), Year; Vol. no., pp.

Papers should not depend for their usefulness on unpublished material, and excessive reference to material "in press" is discouraged. Reference to the authors' own unpublished work is permitted if the subject is of secondary importance to the manuscript in question, but any unpublished results of central importance must be described in sufficient detail within the manuscript. **If pertinent references are "in press" or unpublished for any reason, furnish copies to enable reviewers to evaluate the manuscript. An electronic copy of these materials should be uploaded according to the directions for review-only Supporting Information.**

TABLES AND ARTWORK

The tables and graphics (illustrations) should be inserted after the Literature Cited section.

Tables and figures should be carefully designed to maximize presentation and comprehension of the experimental data with superfluous information excluded. Useful information not directly relevant to the discussion may be included under Supporting Information.

Tables. Tables may be created using a word processor's text mode or table format feature. The table format feature is preferred. Ensure each data entry is in its own table cell. If the text mode is used, separate columns with a single tab and use a line feed (return) at the end of each row.

Tables should be numbered consecutively with Arabic numerals and should be grouped after the Literature Cited

section. Footnotes in tables should be given letter designations and be cited in the table by italic superscript letters. The sequence of letters should proceed by row rather than by column. Each table should be provided with a descriptive heading, which, together with the individual column headings, should make the table, as nearly as possible, self-explanatory. In setting up tabulations, authors are requested to keep in mind the type area of the journal page (17.8 × 25.4 cm), and the column width (8.5 cm), and to make tables conform to the limitations of these dimensions. **Arrangements that leave many columns partially filled or that contain much blank space should be avoided.** Conversely, arrangements that include >20 columns should be broken into two tables if possible. If *significance of values* is to be indicated, use a lower case letter, on line, one space after the value.

Figures and Artwork. Insert the illustrations into the word-processing file following the Literature Cited. Artwork should be sequentially numbered using Arabic numbers. Schemes and charts may have titles and footnotes; figures should have captions.

For bar charts, bars with hatching patterns generally reproduce well. Bars that range in shading from light to dark gray to black can usually be reproduced successfully, although we do not recommend any more that two shades of gray. A legend needs to be included within the figure itself rather than the patterns or shades included in the caption.

For manuscripts containing gel patterns, use of a high-resolution digital scanner is recommended. Only high-quality digital reproductions will allow reviewers to correctly verify the experimental results. For an example of gel patterns see *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2004**, *52*, 5717–5723, Figures 2 and 3.

Only readable and accurately represented images are acceptable; the **Editors reserve the option to reject images that do not satisfactorily support points made in the manuscript or that are not of satisfactory quality for publication.**

The quality of the illustrations printed in the *Journal* largely depends on the quality of the originals provided. Figures cannot be modified or enhanced by the journal production staff. Contrast is important. Remove all color from graphics, except for those graphics that are to be considered for publication in color (see paragraph below on color reproduction for details). Each figure or photograph should be properly labeled.

Illustrations must fit a one- or two-column format on the journal page. **For efficient use of journal space, single-column illustrations are preferred.**

	single (preferred)	double
minimum width		10.5 cm (4.13 in.)
maximum width	8.25 cm (3.25 in.)	17.78 cm (7 in.)
maximum depth	24 cm (9.5 in.)	24 cm (9.5 in.)

For best results, submit illustrations in the actual size at which they should appear in the journal. Illustrations that do not need to be reduced to fit a single or double column will yield the best quality. Lettering should be no smaller than 4.5 points. (Helvetica or Arial type works well for lettering.) Lines should be no thinner than 0.5 point. Lettering and lines should be of uniform density. Avoid the use of very large and very small lettering within the same figure.

If artwork that must be reduced will be submitted, use larger lettering and thicker lines so that, when reduced, the artwork meets the above-mentioned parameters.

Avoid using complex textures and shading to achieve a three-dimensional effect. To show a pattern, choose a simple crosshatch design.

Color photographs and artwork may be printed in the journal if the Editor approves of their use. Color illustrations should be submitted **only** if they are essential for clarity of communication. Reproduction of color illustrations will be provided at no cost to the author; however, a surcharge of $100 per 100 reprints will be added to the standard cost of reprints. Do not submit color prints to be printed in black and white.

Structural Formulas. Structural formulas are valuable in expressing concisely the precise nature of the compounds under discussion and revealing the essence of the subject to readers unfamiliar with the topic, without their necessary recourse to reference materials. The use of chemical names without accompanying structures may cause readers to overlook the significance of the paper.

Structures should be produced with the use of a drawing program such as ChemDraw. Structure drawing preferences (preset in the ACS Stylesheet in ChemDraw) are as follows:

as drawing settings select	
chain angle	120°
bond spacing	18% of width
fixed length	14.4 points (0.508 cm, 0.2 in.)
bold width	2.0 points (0.071 cm, 0.0278 in.)
line width	0.6 point (0.021 cm, 0.0084 in.)
margin width	1.6 points (0.056 cm, 0.0222 in.)
hash spacing	2.5 points (0.088 cm, 0.0347 in.)
as text settings select	
font	Arial or Helvetica
size	10 points
under preferences choose	
units	points
tolerances	3 pixels
under page setup choose	
paper	US Letter
scale	100%

Using the ChemDraw ruler or appropriate margin settings, create structure blocks, schemes, and equations having maximum widths of 11.3 cm (one-column format) or 23.6 cm (two-column format). Note: if the foregoing preferences are selected as cm values, the ChemDraw ruler is calibrated in cm. Also note that a standard sheet of paper is only 21.6 cm wide, so all graphics submitted in two-column format must be prepared and printed in landscape mode.

Use boldface type for compound numbers but not for atom labels or captions.

Authors using other drawing packages should, as far as possible, modify their program's parameters to reflect the above guidelines.

TABLE OF CONTENTS GRAPHICS

Authors are encouraged to include a suitable graphic for publication in the table of contents (TOC) in the Web edition of the *Journal*. Submission of this graphic is optional. This graphic should capture the reader's attention and, in conjunction with the manuscript's title, should give the reader a quick visual impression of the type of chemistry described. Structures in the TOC graphic should be constructed as specified under Structural Formulas above. The TOC graphic may be up to 4.7 in. (12.0 cm) wide and 1.8 in. (4.6 cm) tall. (See detailed instructions at the Paragon Plus Website.) Text should be limited to labels for compounds, reaction arrows, and figures. The use of color to enhance the scientific value is acceptable. The TOC graphic should be inserted on a separate page at the end of the manuscript file.

SUPPORTING INFORMATION

Extensive tables, graphs, spectra, calculations, and other material beyond a modest content in the printed paper may be

included in the Web edition of the journal. These will **not** be part of the printed article but can be accessed separately on the web by readers.

Supporting Information is uploaded as a separate file, as specified by the manuscript submission system, at the time the manuscript is submitted.

The material should be described in a paragraph inserted between the Acknowledgment and the Literature Cited sections, using the following format: "Supporting Information Available: Description. This material is available free of charge via the Internet at http://pubs.acs.org."

Components of the Supporting Information should be clearly labeled.

DO NOT UPLOAD FIGURES AND TABLES THAT ARE TO BE PUBLISHED IN THE ARTICLE INTO THE SUPPORTING INFORMATION FILE. Figures and tables that will appear in the published article are to be inserted in the manuscript directly after the Literature Cited section.

CURRENTLY ACCEPTABLE WORD-PROCESSING PACKAGES

Refer to the Paragon Plus Environment Website (http://pubs.acs.org/paragonplus/submission/software.html).

LaTeX users should follow the guidelines given at http://pubs.acs.org/paragonplus/submission/tex.html.

WORD-PROCESSING DETAILS

When preparing a manuscript, use the document mode or its equivalent in the word-processing program, that is, do not save files in "Text Only" (ASCII) mode. If a non-Western version of the word-processing software is used to prepare the manuscript, save the file in rich-text format (RTF). Do not include any page-layout instructions such as placement information for graphics in the file. The text should be left justified, and automatic end-of-line hyphenation should be turned off. Use carriage returns only to end headings and paragraphs, not to break lines of text. Do not insert spaces before punctuation. To ensure expeditious processing of a manuscript, the references should conform to the format described under Literature Cited. Ensure that all characters are correctly represented throughout the manuscript: for example, 1 (one) and l (ell), 0 (zero) and O or o (oh), x (ex) and × (times sign). Check the final copy carefully for consistent notation and correct spelling. The editorial office conversion program will faithfully translate any errors to the typeset copy.

All of the text (including the title page, abstract, all sections of the body of the paper, figure captions, scheme or chart titles and footnotes, and references) and tabular material should be in one file, with the complete text first followed by the tabular material. It is best to use the fonts "Times" and "Symbol". Other fonts, particularly those that do not come bundled with the system software, may not translate properly. Ensure that all special characters (Greek characters, math symbols, etc.) are present in the body of the text as characters and not as graphic representations. Consult the documentation for the specific software package being used on how to detect the presence of graphics in the files and replace them with the appropriate text characters.

As additional features become available, these instructions will be updated at the *Journal's* Website.

REVISIONS AND RESUBMISSIONS

For all revisions:

• Clearly identify the manuscript as a revision; reference the manuscript number.

• Include an itemized list of changes, with a response to each comment made by the Editor and by each reviewer.

• Be aware that the manuscript may be sent for additional review, to the same or additional reviewers, at the discretion of the Editor.

• **Please fax the copyright status form to the assigned Editor.**

For all resubmissions:

• Clearly identify all resubmissions; reference the previous manuscript number.

• Include an itemized list of changes, including a response to each comment made by the Editor and by each reviewer.

• **Please fax the copyright status form to the assigned Editor.**

COPYRIGHT STATUS FORM

The ACS Copyright Status Form must be completed and signed for each submitted manuscript. No substitute forms or attachments are acceptable. A copy of this form can be found on the ACS Paragon Plus Website. Authors may upload a PDF or TIF version of the signed form at the time of submission. The Completed and Signed Copyright Form file designation should be selected. The ACS Copyright Status Form is a legal document; therefore, it must be signed as is, in only one place. Alternatively, the signed form may be faxed to the Editor assigned to the manuscript (name, address, and fax number of the Editor will be provided when the manuscript is assigned). **For questions about the form or about signing the form, contact the ACS Copyright Office at (202) 872-4368 or -4367.**

Note: Authors who are not U.S. government employees or bona fide agents should sign the top portion of the form only. If ALL of the authors were employees or bona fide agents of the U.S. government when the paper was prepared, the work is "a Work of the U.S. Government" and only the lower section, "Certification as a Work of the U.S. Government", should be signed if BOTH of the following circumstances apply:

• ALL authors are or were bona fide officers or employees of the U.S. Government when the paper was prepared.

• The work is a "Work of the U.S. Government", prepared by an officer/employee of the U.S. government as part of official duties.

If the work was prepared under a U.S. government contract or is coauthored by a non-U.S. government employee, the work is not a "Work of the U.S. Government"; **DO NOT SIGN THIS LOWER SECTION.** Sign only the top part of the form, on the line marked with the pointing hand. Call the ACS Copyright Office at the above telephone number for assistance.

PROOFS AND REPRINTS

Proofs. Galley proofs are made available to only the corresponding author of a paper via a secure Website. **It is the responsibility of the corresponding author to ascertain that all coauthors agree with the corrections before the corrections are returned.** Corrections should be designated by galley proof line number.

ACS Policies for E-prints and Reprints. Under the ACS Articles on Request policy, the Society will provide (free of charge) to all contributing authors a unique URL within the ACS Website that they may e-mail to colleagues or post on external Websites. These author-directed links are designed to facilitate distribution of an author's published work to interested colleagues. The ACS Articles on Request policy allows 50 downloads within the first year after Web publication and unlimited access via the same author-directed links 12 months after web publication.

The ACS AuthorChoice option establishes a fee-based mechanism for authors or their research-funding agencies to sponsor the open availability of their articles on the web at the time of online publication. Under this policy, the ACS as copyright holder will enable unrestricted Web access to a contributing author's publication from the Society's Website in exchange for a fixed payment from the sponsoring author. ACS AuthorChoice will also enable participating authors to post electronic copies of published articles on their own personal Websites and institutional repositories for noncommercial scholarly purposes and allow immediate open access to an article as soon as it is published on the ACS Website. For more details on ACS AuthorChoice, please visit http://pubs.acs.org/4authors/authorchoice/index.html.

For paper reprints, the reprint order form (provided with the proof) and purchase order or check should be sent prior to the publication date to Cadmus Reprints, P.O. Box 751903, Charlotte, NC, USA 28275-1903. Reprints will be shipped within two weeks after the printed issue date. Neither the Editors nor the Washington ACS Office keeps a supply of reprints; requests for single copies of papers should be addressed to the corresponding author of the paper concerned.

REPORTING SPECIFIC DATA

Bioactivity. Manuscripts reporting on bioactivity of plant-derived or other extracts must also include identification and characterization of individual chemicals responsible for the observed bioactivity.

Gas Chromatographic Methods. For manuscripts in which gas chromatographic methods are used, see "Reporting of Gas Chromatographic Methods", by Morton Beroza and Irwin Hornstein [*J. Agric. Food Chem.* **1973**, *21*, 7A (located at the back of the January 1973 issue or as a link from the *Journal's* Author Information page)].

Spectroscopic Data. This is a guide only; in certain cases different methods of data presentation may be more suitable. Authors are encouraged to consult examples of data presentation published in recent issues of the *Journal* for appropriate style and format. **Complete infrared, NMR, mass, or other spectra will be published only if novel or necessary to substantiate points made under the Results or Discussion sections.** Such presentations take up valuable space, and essentially the same information can frequently be put into a much more compact form by simply listing the position and intensity of the maxima. It is usually not necessary to list all of the maxima in the spectra to provide an adequate description. Report the type of instrument used (e.g., in mass spectrometry, whether magnetic, quadrupole, etc.) and also the type of cell, the solvent (if any), and the state of the sample (whether liquid, gas, solution, etc.).

Mass Spectra. List the molecular ion and about 10 of the major ions with their intensities in parentheses, or more preferably use the method outlined by H. S. Hertz, R. A. Hites, and K. Biemann (*Anal. Chem.* **1971**, *43*, 681–691). This method involves dividing the spectrum into consecutive regions of 14 mass units starting at *m/z* 6 (i.e., 6–19, 20–33, 34–47, 48–61, etc.). The two most intense ions in each region are then listed. Intensities, relative to the most intense ion, the intensity of which is taken as 100, are shown in parentheses immediately following the *m/z* value; for example: hexanal, mass spectrum found (70 eV, two most intense ions each 14 mass units above *m/z* 34): 43 (86), 44 (100), 56 (86), 57 (65), 71 (28), 72 (33), 82 (18), 85 (5), 97 (2), 100 (2). If the molecular ion does not appear in this presentation, the author should indicate it separately.

Proton Magnetic Resonance (PMR or ^{1}H NMR) Spectra. The frequency used, the solvent, and also temperature (if other than ambient) are first specified. The type of unit used (δ or τ) is then stated, followed by the position of the center of gravity of the sharp line, broad line, or spin–spin multiplet in these units. This is then followed by information in parentheses which (1) describes the type of splitting, that is, singlet as s, doublet as d, triplet as t, quadruplet as qd, multiplet as *m*; (2) gives the value of the number of protons the area represents; (3) gives the coupling constant *J*; and (4) gives the part of the molecule connected with the particular absorption with the protons involved underlined.

As an example that would be PMR for ethanol (60 MHz, CCl_4): δ 1.22 (t, 3, $J = 7$ Hz, $CH_2\underline{CH_3}$), 2.58 (s, 1, OH), 3.70 (qd, 2, $J = 7$ Hz, $O\underline{CH_2}CH_3$).

Other Spectra. In general, list position and intensity of the maxima. In some cases it may be desirable to list points of inflection.

A brief explanation should be given for any abbreviations not in common use.

Examples:

• Reporting liquid chromatography (HPLC) and HPLC/MS:

"Analysis of Polyphenolic Antioxidants from the Fruits of Three *Pouteria* Species by Selected Ion Monitoring Liquid Chromatography–Mass Spectrometry", by Jun Ma et al. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2004**, *52*, 5873–5878.

• Reporting data in detail, including UV shifts and IR spectra:

"Characterization of Vegetable Oils: Detailed Compositional Fingerprints Derived from Electrospray Ionization Fourier Transform Ion Cyclotron Resonance Mass Spectrometry", by Zhigang Wu et al. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2004**, *52*, 5322–5328.

Novel Compound Characterization. For a discussion of the *Journal's* expectations for compound characterization, please read "Compound Identification: A *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* Perspective" by R. J. Molyneux and P. Schieberle. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* 2007, *55*, 4625–4629 (DOI: 10.1021/jf070242j). It is essential that novel compounds, either synthetic or isolated from natural sources, be characterized rigorously and unequivocally. Supporting data normally include physical form, melting point (if solid), UV/IR spectra if appropriate, ^{1}H and ^{13}C NMR, mass spectrometric data, and optical rotation (when compounds have chiral centers).

Examples:

• Reporting X-ray data

"Racemic and Enantiopure Synthesis and Physicochemical Characterization of the Novel Taste Enhancer *N*-(1-Carboxyethyl)-6-(hydroxymethyl)pyridinium-3-ol Inner Salt", by Renaud Villard et al. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2004**, *51*, 4040–4045.

• Reporting data in detail, including UV shifts

"Novel Flavonol Glycoside, 7-*O*-Methyl Mearnsitrin, from *Sageretia theezans* and Its Antioxidant Effect", by Shin-Kyo Chung et al. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2004**, *52*, 4664–4668.

• Reporting data for previously known compounds

"Phenolic Constituents and Antioxidant Activity of *Wendita calysina* Leaves (Burrito), a Folk Paraguayan Tea", by Anna Lisa Piccinelli et al. *J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2004**, *52*, 5863–5868.

Flavor Constituents. Manuscripts reporting on flavor constituents should conform to the recommendations made by the International Organization of the Flavor Industry [for details, see the Editorial in the October 1996 issue of *J. Agric. Food Chem.* (*44*, 2941–2941)]. In brief, any identification of a flavoring substance must pass scrutiny of the latest forms of available analytical techniques. **In practice, this means that any particular substance must have its identity confirmed**

by at least two methods, for example, comparison of chromatographic and spectrometric data (which may include GC, MS, IR, and NMR) with those of an authentic sample. If only one method has been applied (MS data alone or retention index or Kovats index alone), the identification shall be labeled "tentative". In addition, authors are encouraged to include at least semiquantitative data on the concentration of an identified component in the original source, for example, foodstuff or plant part. Ranges such as <1 μg/kg, 1–10 μg/kg, and 10–100 μg/kg are acceptable.

Flavor is evoked by smell (aroma) and taste. A good example showing the correct characterization of taste compounds is the study by Czepa and Hofmann (*J. Agric. Food Chem.* **2003**, *51*, 3865–3873). A good example for aroma compound identification is the study by Milo and Grosch (*J. Agric. Food Chem.* **1996**, *48*, 2366–2371).

The use of reference compounds is a must, if data on sensory properties of single compounds are reported. Odor, which is perceived during sniffing of a food extract at a certain retention index, may be indicative of the presence of a given compound, but not conclusive unless substantiated by chromatographic and/or spectrometric data and comparison with an authentic reference compound.

Soil Classification. Soils used in research should be described down to the family level according to the soil classification scheme given in *Soil Taxonomy, A Basic System of Soil Classification for Making and Interpreting Soil Surveys*, 2nd ed. (Agricultural Handbook 436; U.S. Government Printing Office: Washington, DC, 1999) (available on-line at http://soils.usda.gov/technical/classification/taxonomy/). Also give series name if known. This requirement is to allow comparison and extrapolation to other work giving similar soil classifications, as published in journals such as the *Journal of Soil Science*, *Soil Science Society of America Journal*, *Journal of Environmental Quality*, and *Geoderma*. If information is unavailable to classify the soils at the desired family level, classification should be described or estimated at least to the great group level in the same classification system.

Statistics. Manuscripts reporting analytical, biological activity, composition, and related data must include relevant statistical information to support discussion of differences or similarities in data sets. Refer to a standard statistics reference such as *Statistical Methods*, 8th ed.; Snedecor, G. W., Cochran, W. G., Eds.; University Press: Ames, IA, 1989.

Animal or Human Studies. Manuscripts describing studies in which the use of live animals or human subjects is involved must include under Materials and Methods a statement that such experiments were performed in compliance with the appropriate laws and institutional guidelines, and also name the institutional committee that approved the experiments. For experiments with human subjects, a statement that informed consent was obtained from each individual must be included and the consent forms made available to the *Journal* on request. Reviewers of manuscripts involving animal or human experiments will be asked to comment specifically on the appropriateness and conformity to regulations of such experiments.

Animal Subjects. The use of animals in a study should be employed only when there are no alternative methods for investigating the fundamental questions of the study. In such cases, it is the ethical responsibility of all authors to ensure that the care of animals is of the highest possible order, that pain and/or distress is minimized, and that the numbers involved are strictly limited to those essential to fulfill the experimental design. In the United States the care and use of laboratory animals is regulated by the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) under the Animal Welfare Act. Links to the regulations, including a checklist of Institutional Animal Use and Care Committees (IAUCC) guidelines, is available at http://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_welfare/publications_and_reports.shtml. It is recognized that researchers in other countries may be governed by different laws and regulations. In such cases, experiments should be designed to conform either to the above USDA regulations or to the International Guiding Principles for Biomedical Research Involving Animals (1985), available at http://www.cioms.ch/frame_1985_texts_of_guidelines.htm.

Human Subjects. The use of human subjects in experimental studies requires informed consent. Such consent requires that the subjects be informed completely not only about the procedures involved but also about the aims, design, and expected outcomes of the study. Consent must be obtained not only when subjects are involved directly in the study but also when samples (tissue, blood, plasma, etc.) are required for in vitro experiments. In the United States the protection of human research subjects is regulated by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). Regulations are available at http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/humansubjects/guidance/45cfr46.htm#46, htm#46.116. Laws and regulations governing researchers in other countries must be observed, but experiments should be designed to conform to the intent of the HHS regulations as far as possible.

In relation to the subject matter of the *Journal*, experiments involving taste and food quality evaluation and consumer acceptance are exempt from the above regulations [CFR 46.101 (b) (6)]. However, it should be noted that this would not exempt studies in which extracts, isolates, pure compounds, etc., obtained from conventional food sources are subjected to such evaluation.

The *Journal* will reject any manuscript for which there is reason to believe that animals have been subjected to unnecessary pain or distress or when informed consent of human subjects is absent or incomplete.

Editor Contact Information:
James N. Seiber, Editor
Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry
Department of Environmental Toxicology
University of California
One Shields Avenue
Davis, California 95616
U.S.A.
Telephone (530) 754-7005
Fax (530) 754-7006
E-mail jafc@ucdavis.edu

Instructions for Authors

Molecules (ISSN 1420-3049) aims to maintain a rigorous peer-review system and a rapid editorial system. This open access journal is funded by publication charges paid by authors and charge waiver program. It is also funded through the deposit of samples with MDPI. This allows us to provide unlimited free access to the online edition for all readers. Authors may distribute an unlimited number of e-reprints via e-mail free of charge. Accepted papers will be published immediately. Authors are kindly asked to prepare and submit manuscripts according the following instructions.

[Submission] [Manuscript Preparation] [Review / Referees] [English Corrections] [Copyright / Open Access] [Reprints] [Sample Deposit] [Natural Product Chemistry special requirement]

Please use a template file to prepare your paper.

Submission of Manuscripts

- Manuscripts (regular papers, reviews and communications) should be submitted by e-mail to molecules@mdpi.org

- *Molbank* section became a separate journal since 2002 and the short notes should be submitted to molbank@mdpi.org.

- Check in your cover letter whether you supplied at least 5 referees. Check if the English corrections are done before submission.

[Return to top]

Manuscript Preparation

- Manuscripts should be prepared in English using a word processor. A template file can be used. MS Word for Macintosh or for Windows .doc or .rtf files are preferred. Manuscripts may be prepared with other software, provided that the full document (with figures, schemes and tables inserted into the text) is exported to a MS Word format for submission. Times or Times New Roman font is preferred. The font size should be 12 pt. and the line spacing "at least" 17 pt. Although our final output is in .pdf format, authors are asked to not send manuscripts in this format as editing them is much more complicated.

Special Notes regarding MS Word files:

- Please do not insert any graphics (schemes, figures, etc.) into a movable frame which can superimpose the text and make the layout very difficult.
- Most formatting codes will be removed or replaced on processing your article so there is no need to use excessive layout styling. In addition, options such as automatic word breaking, double columns, footnotes, automatic numbering (especially for references) or add-ins like EndNote should not be used. However, bold face, italic, subscripts, superscripts, etc. may be used for emphasis as needed. Authors from countries where right-to-left writing is used should ensure their manuscripts have Western style (left-to-right) formatting.

- The standard style of *Molecules* should be followed. Prospective authors should consult any current issue of *Molecules* for examples of this style. A template file may be downloaded from the *Molecules* homepage.
- Authors' full mailing addresses, homepage addresses, phone and fax numbers, e-mail addresses and homepages can be included in the title page and these will be published in the manuscripts and the Table of Contents. The corresponding author should be clearly identified. It is the corresponding author's responsibility to ensure that all co-authors are aware of and approve of the contents of a submitted manuscript.
- A brief (200 word maximum) Abstract should be provided. The use in the Abstract of numbers to identify compounds should be avoided, unless these compounds are also identified by name.
- A list of three to five keywords must be given, and placed after the Abstract. Keywords may be single words or very short sentences.
- Although variations in accord with a manuscript's contents are permissible, in general all papers should have the following sections: Introduction, Results and Discussion, Conclusions, Acknowledgments (if applicable), Experimental and References (or References and Notes, if applicable).
- Authors are encouraged to prepare figures and schemes in color. Full color graphics will be published free of charge. Conference slides, video sequences, software, etc., can also be included and will be published as supplementary material.
- Tables should be inserted into the main text, and numbers and titles supplied for all tables. All table columns should have an explanatory heading. To facilitate layout of large tables, smaller fonts may be used, but in no case should these be less than 10 pt. in size. Authors should use the Table option of MS Word to create tables, rather than tabs, as tab delimited columns are often difficult to format in .pdf for final output.
- Figures and schemes should also be placed in numerical order in the appropriate place within the main text. Numbers, titles and legends should be provided for all schemes and figures. These should be prepared as a separate paragraph of the main text and placed in the main text before the figure or scheme. Chemical structures and reaction schemes should be drawn using an appropriate software package designed for this purpose. As a guideline, these should be drawn to a scale such that all the details and text are clearly legible when placed in the manuscript (i.e. text should be no smaller that 8-9 pt.). To facilitate editing we recommend the use of any of the software packages widely available for this

purpose: MDL® Isis/Draw, ACD/ChemSketch®, CS ChemDraw®, ChemWindow®, etc. Free versions of some of these products are available for personal or academic use from the respective publishers. If another less common structure drawing software is used, authors should ensure the figures are saved in a file format compatible with of one of these products.

- *X-ray crystallographic data.* To avoid publication of extensive compilations of crystallographic data and facilitate refereeing of manuscripts, *Molecules* has entered a data deposition scheme with the Cambridge Crystallographic Data Centre (http://www.ccdc.cam.ac.uk/). Authors planning to include such results in their papers should contact the CCDC to deposit the crystallographic data and obtain the corresponding CCDC deposition number(s) before submitting their manuscripts to *Molecules* (for instructions on doing this, see: http://www.ccdc.cam.ac.uk/conts/depositing.html). The deposition number(s) (usually provided by the CCDC within 3 working days) should be included in the manuscript, along with the following text: "CCDC ..... contains the supplementary crystallographic data for this paper. These data can be obtained free of charge via www.ccdc.cam.ac.uk/conts/retrieving.html (or from the CCDC, 12 Union Road, Cambridge CB2 1EZ, UK; fax: +44 1223 336033; e-mail: deposit@ccdc.cam.ac.uk)". This text may be included in the General subsection of the Experimental or as a suitably referenced endnote.
- *Experimental data. Molecules* is first and foremost a repository of synthetic procedures and data. The Experimental section should have an initial subsection labeled *General*, containing information on materials, methods, analytical instrumentation used, etc. To allow for correct abstracting of the manuscripts all compounds should be mentioned by correct chemical name, followed by any numerals used to refer to them in the paper. The use of the IUPAC nomenclature conventions is preferred, although alternate naming systems (for example CAS rules) may be used provided that a single consistent naming system is used throughout a manuscript. For authors perhaps unfamiliar with chemical nomenclature in English we recommend the use of compound naming software such as AutoNom. Full experimental details must be provided, or, in the case of many compounds prepared by a similar method, a representative typical procedure should be given. The general style used in the *Journal of Organic Chemistry* is preferred. Complete characterization data must be given for all new compounds. For papers mentioning large numbers of compounds a tabular format is acceptable. For known compounds appropriate literature references must be given.
- *References.* For bibliographic citations the reference numbers should be placed in square brackets, i.e., [ ], and placed before the punctuation, for example [4]. or [1-3], and all the references should be listed separately and as the last section at the end of the manuscript. The ACS style for references(http://pubs.acs.org) is used for all MDPI journals.

  Journal references should cite the title of the paper and its starting and ending pages, thus

8. Bowman, C. M.; Landee, F. A.; Reslock, M. A. Chemically Oriented Storage and Retrieval System. 1. Storage and Verification of Structural Information. *J. Chem. Doc.* **1967**, *7*, 43-47.
Journal titles should be abbreviated according to standard ISO rules. A useful list of journal title abbreviations is available on the *Molecules* website at http://www.mdpi.org/molecules/journallist.htm. Other relevant listings are widely available on the Internet, for example: http://www.cas.org/sent.html (CASSI abbreviations).

References to books should cite the author(s), title, publisher, publication date, and page(s).

9. Smith, A. B. *Textbook of Organic Chemistry*; D. C. Jones: New York, 1961; pp 123-126.

In referring to a book written by various contributors, cite author(s) first, as in

10. Winstein, S.; Henderson, R. B. In *Heterocyclic Compounds*; Elderfield, R. C., Ed.; Wiley: New York, 1950; Vol. 1, Chapter 1, p 60.

- Copyright of published papers. We will typically insert the following note at the end of the paper:

[Return to top]

Referees

Authors should suggest at least *five* referees with the appropriate technical expertise, although the Editor will not necessarily approach them. Their addresses, homepage addresses, phone and fax numbers and e-mail addresses should be provided as fully as possible.

[Return to top]

English corrections

This journal is published in English, so it is essential that for proper refereeing and quick publication all manuscripts be submitted in grammatically correct English. For this purpose we ask that non-native English speakers ensure their manuscripts are checked before submitting them for consideration. We suggest that for this purpose your manuscript be revised by an English speaking colleague before submission. Additional fees of 250 CHF will be paid by authors if extensive English corrections must be done by the editors.

[Return to top]

Copyright / Open Access

Articles published in *Molecules* will be open-access articles distributed under the terms and conditions of the Creative Commons Attribution license. MDPI will insert following note at the end of the published text:

[Return to top]

Reprints

Printed reprints may be ordered at a nominal cost. Electronic files of the published papers (e-reprint) can be distributed by the authors for noncommercial purposes.

[Return to top]

Sample Deposit and Exchange

In adition to the payment of Open Access publishing fees, authors are encouraged to register or submit samples of the key compounds and appropriate intermediates from each paper to MDPI in Switzerland for deposit and distribution at a reasonable price to help defray the publication costs. Contributions of starting materials, intermediates or other non-commercially available samples are also acceptable. *Sample Availability* information should be included after the "References and Notes" section of the manuscript, and before the copyright notice. For details, visit: http://www.mdpi.org/. Samples should be sent to

Dr. Shu-Kun Lin
Molecular Diversity Preservation International (MDPI)
Kandererstrasse 25, CH-4057 Basel, Switzerland
Tel.: (+41) 79 322 3379, Fax: (+41) 61 302 8918
E-mail: lin@mdpi.org (http://www.mdpi.org/lin/)

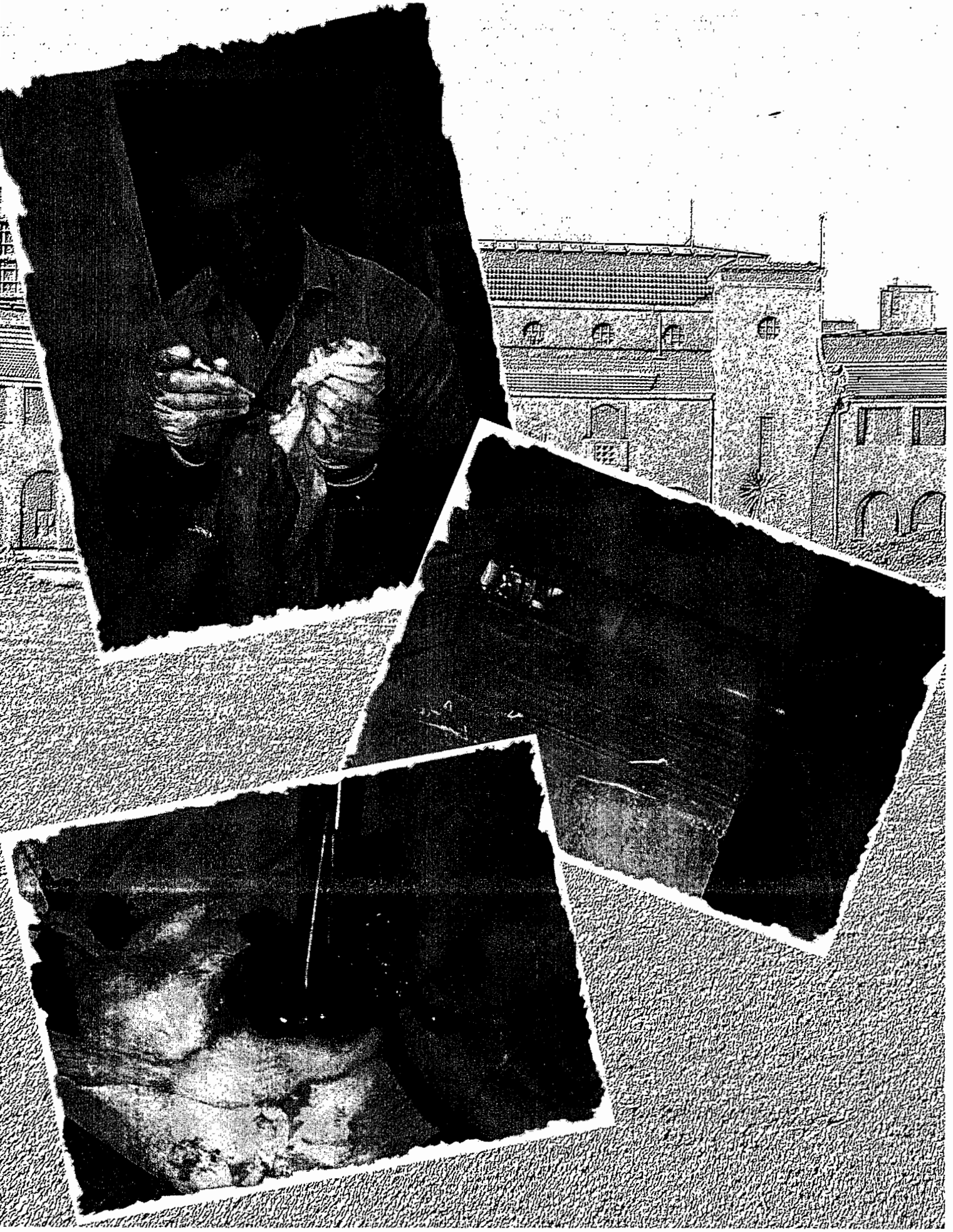
Correct identification of components of *natural products*

The correct identification of the various components of extracts from natural sources is of key importance, and as publishers we are keenly aware of our responsibility to the scientific community in this area. Consequently, for papers on this topic, we have adopted the recommendations of the Working Group on Methods of Analysis of the International Organization of the Flavour Industry (IOFI), as published in *Flavour Fragr. J.* **2006**, *21*, 185. These recommendations may be summarized as follows:

Any identification of a natural compound must pass scrutiny by the latest forms of available analytical techniques. This implies that its identity must be confirmed by at least two different methods, for example, comparison of chromatographic and spectroscopic data (including mass, IR and NMR spectra) with those of an authentic sample, either isolated or synthesized. For papers claiming the first discovery of a given compound from a natural source, the authors must provide full data obtained by their own measurements of both the unknown and an authentic sample, whose source must be fully documented. Authors should also consider very carefully potential sources of artifacts and contaminants resulting from any extraction procedure or sample handling.

Molecules (ISSN 1420-3049)
Last change: 26 July 2008, Webmaster: molecules@mdpi.org


11 9:10
11 9:12



Jer. 29 v 11

"For I know the plans I have for you, declares the Lord, plans to prosper you and not to harm you, plans to give you a hope and a future."